

Editor in Chief: IRVING S. WRIGHT, M.D.
 Consulting Editor: RICHARD H. ORR, M.D.

The Megaloblastic Anemias

by VICTOR HERBERT, M.D.

Dr. Victor Herbert is Assistant
 Professor of Medicine at the
 University of California, San Francisco
 and is also a member of the
 American Society of Internal Medicine.

S. M. S. MEDICAL COLLEGE,
 LIBRARY,



FIVE DOLLARS • 1939

NEW YORK AND LONDON

Editor in Chief IRVING S. WRIGHT, M.D.
Consulting Editor RICHARD H. ORR, M.D.

The Megaloblastic Anemias

By VICTOR HERBERT, M.D.

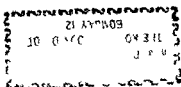
Research Assistant in Hematology
The Mount Sinai Hospital, New
York. Formerly Research Asso-
ciate, Thorndike Memorial Labo-
ratory, Boston City Hospital and
Instructor in Medicine, Harvard
Medical School.

S M S MEDICAL COLLEGE,
LIBRARY, JAIPUR.



GRUNE & STRATTON • 1959

NEW YORK AND LONDON



The manuscript of this volume was awarded
HONORABLE MENTION
in the first Modern Medical Monographs Competition

Copyright © 1959 by Crane and Stratton Inc.
381 Park Avenue South New York 16 New York
Library of Congress catalog card number 59-10462
Printed and bound in the United States of America
(11)

Contents

PREFACE	v
1 INCIDENCE	1
2 HEMATOLOGIC MORPHOLOGY	3
3 THE BIOCHEMICAL BASIS OF MEGALOBlastic HEMATOPOIESIS	15
4 ETIOLOGIC CLASSIFICATION OF THE MEGALOBlastic ANEMIAS DUE TO VITAMIN B ₁₂ DEFICIENCY	18
I Inadequate ingestion	18
A Vegetarian	19
B Chronic Alcoholism	19
C Poverty Religious Tenets Ignorance Dietary Faddism	19
D Hyperthyroidism	20
II Defective Absorption	20
A Inadequate or Absent Secretion of Intrinsic Factor	21
1 Failure of the Stomach to Adequately Secrete Intrinsic Factor	22
a Addisonian Pernicious Anemia	22
b Lesions Which Destroy the Gastric Mucosa	25
c Endocrine Disorders	25
2 Gastrectomy	26
a Total	26
b Subtotal	26
3 Intrinsic Factor Inhibitor in Gastric Secretion	28
B Small Intestinal Disorder	30
1 Malabsorption Syndrome	31
a Primary	32
b Secondary	34
2 Specific Malabsorption for Vitamin B ₁₂	35
a Due to Long Term Ingestion of Calcium Chelating Agents	35
b Due to Absence of Intestinal Receptors for Intrinsic Factor	36
C Competition for Vitamin B ₁₂ by Intestinal Parasites or Bacteria	39
1 Fish Tapeworm (<i>Diphyllobothrium Latum</i>)	39
2 Bacteria The Blind Loop Syndrome	39
III Inadequate Utilization	40
A Inability to Utilize Vitamin B	40
B Parasitization by Fetus	42
C Inability to Retain Absorbed Vitamin B	42
5 ETIOLOGIC CLASSIFICATION OF THE MEGALOBlastic ANEMIAS DUE TO FOLIC ACID DEFICIENCY AND OTHER CAUSES	44
I Nutritional Folic Acid Deficiency	45
A Inadequate Diet	45
1 Megaloblastic Anemias in Infancy	48
2 Megaloblastic Anemia in Pregnancy and Puerperium	49
3 Nutritional Megaloblastic Anemia (Tropical and Non-tropical Macrocytic Anemia)	51
4 Cirrhosis Associated with Chronic Alcoholism	52
B Defective Absorption	53
1 Malabsorption Syndrome	53
a Primary	53
b Secondary	55
C Competition for Folic Acid by Intestinal Bacteria The Blind Loop Syndrome	55

II Inadequate Utilization of Folic Acid	56
A Inability to Utilize	56
1 Due to Administration of Folic Acid Antagonists	56
2 Due to Administration of Anticonvulsants or Pyrimethamine	56
3 Due to Ascorbic Acid Deficiency	58
B Parasitization	58
1 By Fetus	58
2 By Malignant <i>T. suis</i> ?	59
III Achrestic Anemia (Idiopathic Refractory Megaloblastic Anemia)	59
Other Causes	60
6 CLINICAL PICTURE	63
7 DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS	66
I Clinical	76
II Laboratory	79
A Gastric Acidity	79
B Assay of Intrinsic Factor in Gastric Juice	81
C Vitamin B ₁₂ Serum Levels	82
D "Folic Acid" Serum Levels	82
E Tests of Folic Acid Absorption, Store, and Utilization	87
F Assay of Metabolic Products Found in the Urine of Folic Acid Deficient Patients	88
G Tests of Vitamin B ₁₂ Absorption	90
8 THERAPY	95
I Vitamin B ₁₂	100
A Parenteral	100
B Oral	104
1 Vitamin B ₁₂ Alone	105
2 Vitamin B ₁₂ Plus Hog Intrinsic Factor Concentrate	106
3 Other Oral Therapy with Vitamin B ₁₂ and Added Agent	108
II Folic Acid	109
III Citrovorum Factor (Folnic Acid)	110
IV Liver Extract	111
V Ascorbic Acid (Vitamin C)	112
VI Blood Transfusion	113
VII Adrenocorticotrophic Hormone (ACTH) and Adrenocortical Steroid	114
VIII Other Therapy	115
SUMMARY	116
REFERENCES	117
INDEX	152

Preface

APPROXIMATELY EIGHTY YEARS AGO Ehrlich¹ described a pathologic type of erythrocyte maturation in pernicious anemia. This abnormal developmental line of erythrocytes was designated as the megaloblastic or large germ cell series to differentiate it from the normoblastic or normal sized germ cell series. Anemia associated with this abnormal morphologic picture has become known as megaloblastic anemia.

In the eight decades since Ehrlich's first description much has been learned about the nature and significance of megaloblastic blood cell formation. The overwhelming majority of megaloblastic anemias have been found to be due to a deficiency of either vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid or both vitamins.^{3, 4} When a megaloblastic morphologic picture has been observed in conditions other than frank deficiency of these vitamins the condition has been characterized by inhibition or exhaustion of the bone marrow with possible local deprivation of vitamin B₁₂, folic acid or building blocks for nucleoprotein synthesis in which vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid serve as co factors. The accumulated information has made possible a unified concept of the megaloblastic anemias as a single morphologic entity due to defective nucleoprotein synthesis of various causes. This monograph will be concerned with the development of megaloblastic anemia in morphologic and biochemical terms, the causes of megaloblastic anemia as it occurs clinically, application of this knowledge to accurate differential diagnosis of these anemias and a simple and rational approach to therapy based on the actual clinical problem as determined by proper differential diagnosis.

This monograph is based in large measure on recent massive and productive research in the field of the megaloblastic anemias carried out and reported from all parts of the globe. This is supplemented by the author's own research experiences and observations of more than 200 cases of megaloblastic anemia seen

at the Albert Einstein College of Medicine--Bronx Municipal Hospital Center the Montefiore Hospital and the Mount Sinai Hospital all in New York.

The author is indebted to his mentors at each of these three eminent institutions Dr Irving M London Dr Theodore H Spaet and Dr Louis R Wasserman. The freedom of inquiry and wise counsel they gave did much to make this monograph possible. The author is also indebted to Dr William B Castle whose continued interest in the investigative work pursued by the author was a great sustaining force.

Gratitude is also due the New York Heart Association and Heart Fund Inc and its Medical Director (now retired) Dr D F Milam for personal interest in and support of this work from its inception through four years of Research and Senior Research Fellowships given to the author. Finally and by no means least United States Public Health Service Research Grants to Drs London Spaet Wasserman and the author as well as a grant from the National Vitamin Foundation and various other grants provided the equipment and supplies for much of the research related to the megaloblastic anemias with which the author was connected.

The author would like to thank the staff of Crune and Stratton for their patience and editorial help.

VICTOR HERBERT M D

1 Incidence

MEGALOBlastic ANEMIA is common all over the world although the percentage of such anemias due to any specific cause varies widely from one geographic area to another and from one set of circumstances to another in any single area. As examples may be cited the prevalence of nutritional megaloblastic anemia in India ⁵⁻⁸ Macedonia ⁹ and Malaya ¹⁰ the frequency of fish tape worm megaloblastic anemia in Finland especially widespread during World War II when particularly harsh conditions prevailed among the Finnish soldiers ¹¹ and the proneness of persons from the Scandinavian countries England Ireland and Canada to develop classic addisonian pernicious anemia ¹

The most common causes of megaloblastic anemia in the New York metropolitan area where the author acquired most of his experience with the disorder are addisonian pernicious anemia and malabsorption syndrome. The former is most common in the majority of patients the latter predominates among the inhabitants of the city born in Puerto Rico. In all of the three New York hospitals with which the author has had major affiliation approximately 10 per cent of the entire hematology department case load consisted of patients with megaloblastic anemia ^{*} It is of interest in this connection that approximately the same percentage of the text of Wintrobe's *Clinical Hematology* ¹² is devoted to the subject of the megaloblastic anemias attesting to the importance of the subject to physicians in general and hematologists in particular.

The hematologic caseload of patients with megaloblastic anemia of the classic addisonian pernicious anemia variety shows every indication of a gradual future increase. This is a result of the fact that addisonian pernicious anemia is primarily a

Of course if the many cases of simple chronic anemia (as defined by Wintrobe ¹²) and iron deficiency anemia which are never referred to hematology departments were so referred the percentage of hematology department patients with megaloblastic anemia might be less than 10 per cent of the total caseload.

disease of late adult life ¹⁴ and the average life expectancy of the population is increasing Addisonian pernicious anemia is very rare in children ¹⁵ rare in adults under 30 years and seldom seen prior to the age of 40 ¹⁴

It is presently believed that the decrease in serum vitamin B₁₂ levels with aging is of dubious significance ¹⁶ However the increase in gastric atrophy with aging is not in doubt Gastric atrophy may be a factor in the decrease in serum vitamin B₁₂ levels and in the eventual development in some cases of megaloblastic anemia due to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency ^{17 18} (See section

Hereditarily Determined Degenerative Gastric Atrophy page 21)

2 *Hematologic Morphology*

IN A WELL DEVELOPED CASE of megaloblastic anemia the picture presented by both the peripheral blood and the bone marrow is usually so characteristic as to be impossible to confuse with the morphologic picture of any other disorder. In the peripheral blood are found many large and frequently oval erythrocytes (macrocytes and macroovalocytes, the latter often referred to as megalocytes by European clinicians and morphologists). The nuclei of the neutrophilic polymorphonuclear leukocytes are hypersegmented^{1, 2} as often are the nuclei of the eosinophils; oval neutrophils may be seen, and in addition to the frequently being obviously reduced in number, many of the platelets may be giant and bizarre in appearance.³

This picture is accompanied by a decrease in the total number of erythrocytes and neutrophilic polymorphonuclear leukocytes and an increase in the mean corpuscular volume (MCV) of the erythrocytes due to the increased size of the average red blood cell. FIGURE 1 shows the typical appearance of the peripheral blood of a patient with megaloblastic anemia. With respect to the red blood cell morphology, it should be noted that aside from the characteristic macrocytosis and macroovalocytosis, marked anisocytosis and poikilocytosis are frequently not present when the anemia is not severe.

The reticulocytes in the peripheral blood usually represent about 1 per cent of the total number of circulating erythrocytes. This is probably a consequence of the fact that the asynchronism in development of nucleus and cytoplasm of the erythrocyte precursors in the bone marrow results in frequent disappearance of cytoplasmic reticulum even before the nucleus is extruded. Thus more than half of the erythrocytes delivered to the peripheral blood from the bone marrow may be without reticulum. In megaloblastic anemia, therefore, the reticulocyte count provides an erroneously low figure of the rate of red cell production.⁴



FIG. 1.—The peripheral blood in megaloblastic anemia (From DALAND C. A. HALL T. H. AND HOTTI E. *A Color Atlas of Morphologic Hematology*, Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1951)



Fig. 2.—Megaloblastic development of the erythroid series

The bone marrow displays megaloblastic development of the erythrocytes as shown in FIGURE 2. By comparison with normal (normoblastic) erythrocyte maturation the megaloblastic series presents a larger size at every stage during development with a larger amount of cytoplasm in proportion to the size of the nucleus. The nucleus itself is very large compared to the nucleus of a normoblast and there is a striking disparity between the apparent maturity of the nucleus and that of the cytoplasm. This disparity or nuclear cytoplasmic dissociation or asynchronism as it is variously termed⁵⁻⁷ is reflected in the much more particulate nuclear chromatin (young nucleus or nucleus with retarded maturation)⁸ of the megaloblasts at all stages of their development even when hemoglobin is clearly visible in the cytoplasm (old cytoplasm).²⁻⁹ The megaloblasts with their finely particulate young chromatin are easily distinguished from normoblasts with their coarsely clumped old nuclear chromatin especially in those cells where hemoglobinization of the cytoplasm is visibly beginning.

Another striking feature of the bone marrow morphology in megaloblastic anemia is a megaloblastic polymorphonuclear leukopoiesis manifested most dramatically by the presence of many giant metamyelocytes as depicted in FIGURE 3.

There is usually a marked increase in the number of mitotic and binucleate cells in the erythroid series.

The degree of overt megaloblastosis of the bone marrow appears generally to be proportional to the severity of the anemia. Study of patients after total gastrectomy¹⁰ demonstrated the evolutionary sequence in the development of megaloblastic anemia to be macrocytosis first, anemia second (after an average delay of one or two years following the appearance of macrocytosis) and megaloblastic marrow third and last.

Note that the first hematologic evidence of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency is macrocytosis (and an Arneith count shift to the right) with the bone marrow presumably remaining normoblastic until two or three years later. Of course the macrocytes must have come from abnormal precursors and in every case of



FIG. 1.—The peripheral blood in megaloblastic anemia (From DALAND C. A. HAM T. H. AND JORTH F. A *Color Atlas of Morphologic Hematology* Cambridge Harvard University Press 1951)



Fig. —Megaloblastic development of the erythrocyte

The bone marrow displays megaloblastic development of the erythrocytes as shown in *FIGURE 2*. By comparison with normal (normoblastic) erythrocyte maturation the megaloblastic series presents a larger size at every stage during development with a larger amount of cytoplasm in proportion to the size of the nucleus. The nucleus itself is very large compared to the nucleus of a normoblast and there is a striking disparity between the apparent maturity of the nucleus and that of the cytoplasm. This disparity or nuclear cytoplasmic dissociation or asynchronism as it is variously termed⁵⁻⁷ is reflected in the much more particulate nuclear chromatin (young nucleus or nucleus with retarded maturation)⁸ of the megaloblasts at all stages of their development even when hemoglobin is clearly visible in the cytoplasm (old cytoplasm).⁹ The megaloblasts with their finely particulate young chromatin are easily distinguished from normoblasts with their coarsely clumped old nuclear chromatin especially in those cells where hemoglobinization of the cytoplasm is visibly beginning.

Another striking feature of the bone marrow morphology in megaloblastic anemia is a megaloblastic polymorphonuclear leukopoiesis manifested most dramatically by the presence of many giant metamyelocytes as depicted in *FIGURE 3*.

There is usually a marked increase in the number of mitotic and binucleate cells in the erythroid series.

The degree of overt megaloblastosis of the bone marrow appears generally to be proportional to the severity of the anemia. Study of patients after total gastrectomy³⁰ demonstrated the evolutionary sequence in the development of megaloblastic anemia to be macrocytosis first anemia second (after an average delay of one or two years following the appearance of macrocytosis) and megaloblastic marrow third and last.

Note that the first hematologic evidence of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency is macrocytosis (and in Arnetti count shift to the right) with the bone marrow presumably remaining normoblastic until two or three years later. Of course the macrocytes must have come from abnormal precursors and in every case of

early vitamin B₁₂ deficiency disease which the author has seen careful search of the bone marrow smear has revealed the presence of intermediate megaloblasts and large metamyelocytes. It is probable that these marrow findings are always present when the peripheral blood contains macroovalocytes and neutrophilic



FIG. 3—Giant metamyelocyte in a megaloblastic bone marrow. (Note also the pinching of the nuclei of the smaller and more mature metamyelocytes into multiple segments resulting in the typical hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes as associated with megaloblastic anemia.)

polymorphonuclear leukocytes whose nuclei show an increased amount of segmentation even though most workers do not comment in print about abnormalities in the bone marrow until it is frankly megaloblastic. More will be said about the intermediate megaloblast shortly. For the present suffice it to say that emphasis on the macroovalocyte and the hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocyte as the first indicators of a developing megaloblastic anemia is quite proper since they are usually easily recognized and are found in the peripheral blood. Recognition of intermediate megaloblasts and large metamyelocytes

however requires aspiration of the bone marrow and a fair amount of experience in looking at bone marrow morphology. It is wise for the person who does not examine blood and bone marrow preparations duly to compare both the peripheral blood and the bone marrow of the patient with that of a normal control subject. If he does not do this he will miss many cases of early megaloblastic anemia since he will not recognize the early hematologic changes.¹³

Darby et al.³¹ believe that macrocytosis is the most sensitive indicator of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency. Their long term observations of patients with pernicious anemia receiving smaller than minimal maintenance dosages of vitamin B₁₂ indicated that the quantity of the vitamin needed for hematopoiesis exceeded that needed for other clinically recognizable physiologic functions. In the author's experience an Arneth count shift to the right invariably accompanies the macrocytosis and may even precede it.

A single case was reported suggesting that vitamin B₁₂ deficiency may be manifested by an increase in the number of giant nuclei in the oral epithelial cells even before macrocytic erythrocytes make their appearance. The patient had overt neurologic damage, a serum vitamin B₁₂ level of 60 $\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$ (L. Leishman assay), a serum iron concentration of 140 $\mu\text{g}/100\text{ ml}$ and definitely was not receiving folic acid therapy. It was stated that there was no hypersegmentation of granulocytes but an Arneth count was not reported. A photograph of the patient's peripheral blood smear was presented and interpreted by the authors as normal except for slight anisocytosis but it appeared suggestive of macrocytosis and at least one of the erythrocytes looked like a macroovalocyte (megalocyte). The hematocrit and red cell count were not obtained so the MCV could not be calculated.

In the absence of folic acid administration the author has never seen a patient having a serum vitamin B₁₂ level below 100 $\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$ without incipient or overt iron deficiency who did not have at least macroovalocytosis and an Arneth count shift

to the right in the peripheral blood and at least intermediate megaloblasts and large metamyelocytes in the bone marrow.

Dr Boen generously made the patient's original peripheral blood and bone marrow smears available for examination. The peripheral blood showed only one or two macroovalocytes per oil immersion field but an Arneeth count revealed a definite shift to the right with 14 per cent of the neutrophilic polymorphonuclear leukocytes having more than 5 lobes. The bone marrow contained a large number of large metamyelocytes and an occasional intermediate megaloblast but no megaloblasts. A generalized pallor of the erythrocytes suggested a possible concomitant iron deficiency despite the normal serum iron level. (Such a deficiency would explain the lack of a striking macroovalocytosis in the peripheral blood.)

Thus this patient did have hematologic changes as well as epithelial cell changes and the case illustrated once again the importance of the Arneeth count in helping to ascertain the existence of vitamin B₁₂ and/or folic acid deficiency. The question as to whether macrocytic changes due to deficiency of vitamin B₁₂ may appear first in the oral epithelial cells or the hematic cells remains open. Theoretically one would expect macrocytic changes to appear first in those cells which normally proliferate most rapidly. Concomitant iron deficiency might mask the macrocytic changes in the erythrocytes without masking the changes in the oral epithelial cells whose iron requirement is much lower.

Recognition of the earliest hematologic signs of incipient megaloblastic anemia is particularly important because severe nervous system damage may occur in vitamin B₁₂ deficient patients prior to development of a megaloblastic marrow and even before anemia appears.³¹ The earlier such cases are recognized and proper treatment instituted the less irreversible damage will be done. (See CHAPTER 6, Clinical Picture, page 66 for cases in point.)

The process of development of megaloblastic anemia may take years probably because the body is able to draw on its

liver stores of vitamin B₁₂³⁴⁻³⁸ and folic acid³⁴⁻³⁹ when the exogenous supply is cut off. A simple screening procedure generally applicable to all patients on a routine basis and making it possible to recognize incipient megaloblastic anemia would be of great value. Such a procedure has long been at hand and has been applied with marked success at the Montefiore Hospital where in the course of a single year it increased the number of newly discovered cases of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency disease from one every six weeks to one every six days.⁴⁰ In fully one third of these cases no anemia was present and the diagnosis was not even remotely suspected prior to the routine screening; the patients had been admitted for evaluation of unrelated conditions. The positive result of the screening procedure led to confirmation of the diagnosis of early vitamin B₁₂ deficiency by determination of the serum vitamin B₁₂ level and Schilling type urinary excretion testing.

This screening procedure consists simply in obtaining a routine peripheral blood smear on every new patient and carefully examining that smear for macroovalocytes and hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes. All of the technicians in the routine clinical hematology laboratory are instructed that the normal average number of lobes of the nuclei of neutrophilic polymorphonuclear leukocytes is 3; that about 40 to 50 per cent normally have 3 lobes, 20 to 40 per cent have 2 lobes, and 15 to 25 per cent have 4 lobes.⁴¹ The finding of more than 3 5-lobed polymorphonuclears per hundred or even a single polymorphonuclear with more than 5 lobes or a substantial increase in the percentage with 4 lobes signals a careful work up for incipient megaloblastic anemia even when absolutely no anemia is demonstrable. An increase in the number of polymorphonuclear leukocytes with 4 or more lobes or Arnett count shift to the right⁴²⁻⁴⁴ has preceded the onset of anemia in every case of incipient megaloblastic anemia this author has observed. Others¹³ also have observed and reported on this phenomenon.

Frequently in incipient megaloblastic anemia many of the hypersegmented polymorphonuclears look at first glance like

normal young polymorphonuclears with horseshoe or sausage shaped nuclei. More careful inspection reveals that what appears to be a single segment is in fact a rosette of overlapping segments or rather a sausage which is being pinched into a number of small round sausages. These abnormal young polymorphonuclears when in the bone marrow are the immediate precursors of the typical hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes usually seen in the peripheral blood⁴ (See FIGURE 3).

When macroovalocytes and hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes are found in the peripheral blood examination of the bone marrow obtained by aspiration biopsy should be the next step. Even if a megaloblastic marrow is not found in such circumstances however work up of the patient for an incipient megaloblastic anemia will be fruitful in the large majority of cases. It cannot be emphasized too strongly that in cases of incipient megaloblastic anemia even highly trained hematologists may not find clearly megaloblastic primitive cells in the bone marrow. This happens despite the presence in the peripheral blood of polymorphonuclear leukocytes with hypersegmented nuclei and occasional macroovalocytes which testify to the fact that some megaloblastic hemitopoiesis must be taking place and despite subsequent confirmation of this diagnosis by determination of the serum vitamin B₁₂ level¹⁷ (which may often be in the low normal range) and the Schilling test (See CHAPTER 6 Clinical Picture page 10 for cases in point).

A recent report⁴⁴ calls attention to the possible usefulness of discriminating from megaloblasts lines of red cell development morphologically intermediate between unequivocal megaloblastic erythropoiesis and normoblastic erythropoiesis (i.e. intermediate megaloblasts).^{45,46} The authors of this report believe that this modified type of megaloblastic erythropoiesis represents the morphologic result of the combination of a condition that would usually produce a megaloblastic marrow and an associated non deficiency at the marrow level.

Actually as eminent authorities^{46,47} have noted intermediate megaloblasts or macroblasts⁴⁸ may be simply eryth-

cyte precursors with a supply of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid which is insufficient for normal maturation but not so grossly inadequate as to result in complete megaloblastosis. They are characteristic of minor or partial deficiencies of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid. Intermediate megaloblasts along with large but not quite giant metamyelocytes are often the only observable abnormality in the bone marrow of patients who are not yet severely anemic but who do have overt macrocytosis and an increase in the number of hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes in the peripheral blood. The author has seen intermediate megaloblastic erythropoiesis in a number of cases of pure vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid deficiency during the period of slight anemia which precedes the full blown clinical picture of megaloblastic anemia as well as early in the period of response to therapy. No associated iron deficiency existed in these cases.

In all 4 cases of the report mentioned⁴³ hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes and macrocytes were noted in the peripheral blood indicating the existence of an underlying megaloblastic erythropoiesis which was manifested in the bone marrow by intermediate megaloblastic erythrocyte development. It is true that associated iron deficiency often results in an intermediate megaloblastic bone marrow morphology. This is the product of interaction of the tendency toward megaloblastosis induced by folic acid or vitamin B₁₂ deficiency and the tendency toward microcytosis induced by iron deficiency. These cases⁴³ along with others in which evaluation of the bone marrow morphology may be difficult further confirm the significance of the presence in the peripheral blood of both macrocytes and hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes in increased numbers.

The intermediate megaloblasts observed in combined iron and vitamin B₁₂ (or folic acid) deficiency are readily converted to overt megaloblasts by iron therapy. Conversely vitamin B₁₂ (or folic acid) therapy will convert the normochromic cells to hypochromic cells.

The presence in the peripheral blood of either macrocytes or

normal young polymorphonuclears with horseshoe or sausage shaped nuclei. More careful inspection reveals that what appears to be a single segment is in fact a rosette of overlapping segments or rather a sausage which is being pinched into a number of small round sausages. These abnormal young polymorphonuclears when in the bone marrow are the immediate precursors of the typical hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes usually seen in the peripheral blood⁴ (See FIGURE 3).

When macroovalocytes and hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes are found in the peripheral blood examination of the bone marrow obtained by aspiration biopsy should be the next step. Even if a megaloblastic marrow is not found in such circumstances, however, work up of the patient for an incipient megaloblastic anemia will be fruitful in the large majority of cases. It cannot be emphasized too strongly that in cases of incipient megaloblastic anemia even highly trained hematologists may not find clearly megaloblastic primitive cells in the bone marrow. This happens despite the presence in the peripheral blood of polymorphonuclear leukocytes with hypersegmented nuclei and occasional macroovalocytes which testify to the fact that some megaloblastic hemopoiesis must be taking place and despite subsequent confirmation of this diagnosis by determination of the serum vitamin B₁₂ level¹⁷ (which may often be in the low normal range) and the Schilling test (See CHAPTER 6 Clinical Picture page 10 for cases in point).

A recent report⁴³ calls attention to the possible usefulness of discriminating from megaloblasts lines of red cell development morphologically intermediate between unequivocal megaloblastic erythropoiesis and normoblastic erythropoiesis (i.e. intermediate megaloblasts)^{44,45}. The authors of that report believe that this modified type of megaloblastic erythropoiesis represents the morphologic result of the combination of a condition that would usually produce a megaloblastic marrow and an associated iron deficiency at the marrow level.

Actually, as eminent authorities^{46,47,48} have noted, intermediate megaloblasts or macroblasts⁴⁹ may be simply eryth-

erythrocyte precursors with a supply of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid which is insufficient for normal maturation but not so grossly inadequate as to result in complete megaloblastosis. They are characteristic of minor or partial deficiencies of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid. Intermediate megaloblasts along with large but not quite giant metamyelocytes are often the only observable abnormality in the bone marrow of patients who are not yet severely anemic but who do have overt macrocytosis and an increase in the number of hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes in the peripheral blood. The author has seen intermediate megaloblastic erythropoiesis in a number of cases of pure vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid deficiency during the period of slight anemia which precedes the full blown clinical picture of megaloblastic anemia as well as early in the period of response to therapy. No associated iron deficiency existed in these cases.

In all 4 cases of the report mentioned⁴³ hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes and macrocytes were noted in the peripheral blood indicating the existence of an underlying megaloblastic erythropoiesis which was manifested in the bone marrow by intermediate megaloblastic erythrocyte development. It is true that associated iron deficiency often results in an intermediate megaloblastic bone marrow morphology. This is the product of interaction of the tendency toward megaloblastosis induced by folic acid or vitamin B₁₂ deficiency and the tendency toward microcytosis induced by iron deficiency. These cases⁴³ along with others in which evaluation of the bone marrow morphology may be difficult further confirm the significance of the presence in the peripheral blood of both macrocytes and hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes in increased numbers.

The intermediate megaloblasts observed in combined iron and vitamin B₁₂ (or folic acid) deficiency are readily converted to overt megaloblasts by iron therapy. Conversely vitamin B₁₂ (or folic acid) therapy will convert the normochromic cells to hypochromic cells.

The presence in the peripheral blood of either macrocytes or

normal young polymorphonuclears with horseshoe or sausage shaped nuclei. More careful inspection reveals that what appears to be a single segment is in fact a rosette of overlapping segments or rather a sausage which is being pinched into a number of small round sausages. These abnormal young polymorphonuclears when in the bone marrow are the immediate precursors of the typical hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes usually seen in the peripheral blood.⁴ (See FIGURE 3)

When macroovalocytes and hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes are found in the peripheral blood examination of the bone marrow obtained by aspiration biopsy should be the next step. Even if a megaloblastic marrow is not found in such circumstances however work up of the patient for incipient megaloblastic anemia will be fruitful in the large majority of cases. It cannot be emphasized too strongly that in cases of incipient megaloblastic anemia even highly trained hematologists may not find clearly megaloblastic primitive cells in the bone marrow. This happens despite the presence in the peripheral blood of polymorphonuclear leukocytes with hypersegmented nuclei and occasional macroovalocytes which testify to the fact that some megaloblastic hemiopoiesis must be taking place and despite subsequent confirmation of this diagnosis by determination of the serum vitamin B₁₂ level¹⁷ (which may often be in the low normal range) and the Schilling test (See CHAPTER 6 Clinical Picture, page 10 for cases in point).

A recent report⁴⁴ calls attention to the possible usefulness of discriminating from megaloblasts lines of red cell development morphologically intermediate between unequivocal megaloblastic erythropoiesis and normoblastic erythropoiesis (i.e. intermediate megaloblasts).⁴⁴⁻⁴⁷ The authors of that report believe that this modified type of megaloblastic erythropoiesis represents the morphologic result of the combination of a condition that would usually produce a megaloblastic marrow and an associated iron deficiency at the marrow level.

Actually as eminent authorities^{4, 17, 44} have noted intermediate megaloblasts or macroblasts⁴⁸ may be simply eryth

only a hypochromic microcytic anemia with no macroovalocytes present¹³

In the author's experience despite the severity of the iron deficiency and despite partial or complete obliteration of macroovalocytes in the peripheral blood in the presence of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid deficiency *the increase in number of neutrophilic polymorphonuclear leukocytes with hypersegmented nuclei is not masked* and provides a clue to the coexistence of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid deficiency with the iron deficiency (See FIGURE 4)

The author has seen such patients (often pregnant or with a malabsorption syndrome) with concomitant iron deficiency and vitamin B₁₂ deficiency often with associated folic acid



FIG 4—Typical hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes due to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency in the peripheral blood of a patient who did not have macroovalocytosis (or even microcytosis) because of the concomitant iron deficiency. In this case a normocytic normochromic anemia was present due to a perfect cancelling out by each deficiency of the characteristic morphology caused by the other deficiency. Serum vitamin B₁₂ = 10 $\mu\text{g/ml}$ serum iron = 110 $\mu\text{g per cent}$ Hematocrit = 28 per cent hemoglobin = 9.4 Gm/100 ml red cell count = 3.9 million/cu mm MCV = 87 μ MCHC = 34. After vitamin B₁₂ treatment serum iron fell to 6 $\mu\text{g per cent}$ and hypochromic microcytic anemia appeared.

an increased number of hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes alone is of less significance in diagnosing possible megaloblastic anemia actual or incipient than the presence of both together. Reticulocytes are large red cells and an increased number of reticulocytes may convey an erroneous impression that macrocytosis is present. A variable number of macrocytes (and infrequently even some macroovalocytes) are part of the anisocytosis and poikilocytosis which accompany many diseases especially those of a primarily hematologic nature. Macrocytosis is a frequent accompaniment of liver disease^{11, 12} and aplastic anemia; these subjects will be discussed subsequently.

An increased number of polymorphonuclear leukocytes with hypersegmented nuclei is less commonly seen than are macrocytes in conditions other than those leading to a megaloblastic anemia but they do appear with sepsis and widespread malignancy (especially the leukemias) and characterize the interesting familial entity of constitutional hypersegmentation of the neutrophil nucleus.⁴⁸ When both macroovalocytes and hypersegmented polymorphonuclears in increased numbers are clearly present an incipient or actual megaloblastic anemia is the most likely cause.

It may well be that the hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes very occasionally seen with sepsis and widespread malignancy are in fact products of folic acid deficiency at the bone marrow level caused by extremely rapid cell turnover.

The hematologic features of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid deficiency are frequently partly masked by coincident iron deficiency.^{3, 48} Most frequently this masking takes the form of a *dimorphic* peripheral blood picture with some red cells macrocytic and usually fully hemoglobinated but sometimes hypochromic and others microcytic and hypochromic.^{4, 3, 4} Sometimes the microcytes of iron deficiency appear to cancel out the macrocytes of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid deficiency and the patient's peripheral blood picture is that of a normocytic normochromic or hypochromic anemia. If the iron deficiency is of sufficient severity one may observe in the peripheral blood

only a hypochromic microcytic anemia with no macroovalocytes present.¹³

In the author's experience despite the severity of the iron deficiency and despite partial or complete obliteration of macroovalocytes in the peripheral blood in the presence of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid deficiency the increase in number of neutrophilic polymorphonuclear leukocytes with hypersegmented nuclei is not masked and provides a clue to the coexistence of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid deficiency with the iron deficiency (See FIGURE 1).

The author has seen such patients (often pregnant or with malabsorption syndrome) with concomitant iron deficiency and vitamin B₁₂ deficiency often with associated folic acid



FIG. 4.—Typical hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes due to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency in the peripheral blood of a patient who did not have macroovalocytes (or even microcytes) because of the concomitant iron deficiency. In this case a normocytic normochromic anemia was present due to a perfect cancelling out by each deficiency of the erythrocyte morphology caused by the other deficiencies. Serum vitamin B₁₂ = 30 μ g/ml serum iron = 110 μ g per cent. Hematocrit = 31 per cent hemoglobin = 9.4 Gm/100 ml red cell count = 3.2 million/mm³ MCV = 88 μ MCHC = 34. After vitamin B₁₂ treatment serum iron fell to 6 μ g per cent and hypochromic microcytic anemia appeared.

an increased number of hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes alone is of less significance in diagnosing possible megaloblastic anemia actual or incipient than the presence of both together. Reticulocytes are large red cells and an increased number of reticulocytes may convey an erroneous impression that macrocytosis is present. A variable number of macrocytes (and infrequently even some macroovalocytes) are part of the anisocytosis and poikilocytosis which accompany many diseases especially those of a primarily hematologic nature. Macrocytosis is a frequent accompaniment of liver disease^{13, 13a} and aplastic anemia; these subjects will be discussed subsequently.

An increased number of polymorphonuclear leukocytes with hypersegmented nuclei is less commonly seen than are macrocytes in conditions other than those leading to a megaloblastic anemia but they do appear with sepsis and widespread malignancy (especially the leukemias) and characterize the interesting familial entity of constitutional hypersegmentation of the neutrophil nucleus.⁴⁸ When both macroovalocytes and hypersegmented polymorphonuclears in increased numbers are clearly present an incipient or actual megaloblastic anemia is the most likely cause.

It may well be that the hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes very occasionally seen with sepsis and widespread malignancy are in fact products of folic acid deficiency at the bone marrow level caused by extremely rapid cell turnover.

The hematologic features of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid deficiency are frequently partly masked by coincident iron deficiency.^{3, 48a} Most frequently this masking takes the form of a *dimorphic* peripheral blood picture with some red cells macrocytic and usually fully hemoglobinated but sometimes hypochromic and others microcytic and hypochromic.^{49, 48a} Sometimes the microcytes of iron deficiency appear to cancel out the macrocytes of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid deficiency and the patient's peripheral blood picture is that of a normocytic normochromic or hypochromic anemia. If the iron deficiency is of sufficient severity one may observe in the peripheral blood

3 *The Biochemical Basis of Megaloblastic Hematopoiesis*

BIOCHEMICAL STUDIES OF MEGALOBLASTS have been directed in two main channels (1) quantitative chemical studies to determine the differences in content between megaloblasts and normoblasts and (2) studies of the biochemical mechanisms whereby the differences in content occur.

It has been determined that the large amount of cytoplasm of the megaloblast contains considerably more ribonucleic acid (RNA) than the cytoplasm of the normoblast^{10,51} this is true at all stages of maturation and is most striking when hemoglobinization is occurring and RNA is almost gone from the normoblast but still persists in significant concentration in the megaloblast.

The large nucleus of the megaloblast has been estimated to contain as much as double the amount of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) as the normoblast nucleus though not all workers agree that the DNA level of the megaloblast is so high.⁴⁹ There is a fairly definite increase in the RNA/DNA ratio of the megaloblast this is reflected in an increased uracil/thymine ratio.⁵²

Feulgen stained smears of megaloblasts demonstrated their nuclear chromatin to be present in smaller particles than that of normoblasts.⁹

With the demonstration that in the mammal uridine may be incorporated into thymidine,⁴ it was possible to conceive of cytoplasmic RNA as the principal source of material for nuclear DNA and further to suggest that any failure of utilization of RNA to provide material for DNA formation would lead to a persistence of cytoplasmic RNA resulting in macrocyte production. In this schema any retardation of DNA synthesis to the twice resting-cell concentration required for mitosis would cause the marrow to become crowded with cells waiting to divide and slowly building up their DNA content while a large

deficiency in whose peripheral blood striking hypochromia was present along with an increase in the number of polymorphonuclear leukocytes with hypersegmented nuclei but with no macroovalocytosis. Presented with such a case outstanding hematologists have ignored the hypersegmented polymorphonuclears (and the intermediate megiloblasts and large metamyelocytes in the bone marrow) and have made a diagnosis of uncomplicated iron deficiency anemia. These diagnoses were subsequently proved wrong by determination of the serum vitamin B₁₂ level to be below 100 $\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$, the serum folic acid level to be below 5 $\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$, and development of overt megaloblastic anemia with macroovalocytosis after non therapy and cure by administration of vitamin B₁₂ (and folic acid when required). Deficiency of both iron and vitamin B₁₂ without concomitant folic acid deficiency may be noted after total gastrectomy (and occasionally after distal subtotal gastrectomy) with terminal ileitis or other secondary malabsorption states in elderly patients with histamine refractory achlorhydria and anemia⁴⁸ and is a result of two separate disorders coincidentally occurring in the same patient. An example of the latter is the coincidental occurrence of pernicious anemia and gastrointestinal tract bleeding.

Thus in the presence of hypochromic erythrocytes in the peripheral blood it is wise to suspect a concomitant megaloblastic anemia even if no macroovalocytes are present when one observes an increased number of hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes especially when intermediate megiloblasts and large metamyelocytes are present in the bone marrow. It is possible that in conditions other than iron deficiency but also characterized by defective hemoglobin synthesis macroovalocytes may also be absent despite the presence of a coincidental vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid deficiency.

Even when the erythrocytes appear normochromic it is wise to suspect vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid deficiency with associated iron deficiency if there is an increased number of polymorphonuclear leukocytes with nuclei containing more than three lobes.

molecules Vitamin B₁₂ influences folic acid metabolism⁷² but there is no evidence at present that folic acid directly influences vitamin B₁₂ metabolism

When a patient with a megaloblastic anemia is treated with vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid depending on his primary deficiency the RNA/DNA ratio rapidly falls to normal. In pernicious anemia bone marrow cultures vitamin B₁₂ speeds up the production of DNA.⁷³ The speed of these phenomena explains the rapidity with which the megaloblastic marrow converts to normoblastic on institution of treatment almost complete conversion usually occurs within 24 to 48 hours. If conversion does not occur with the anticipated speed either complications are present or the wrong agent is being used (Temporary responses may be obtained with folic acid in vitamin B₁₂ deficiency states or conversely vitamin B₁₂ in folic acid deficiency states but eventually the patient becomes refractory to the wrong agent presumably as a result of complete exhaustion of his remaining stores of the vitamin in which he was deficient.)

Biochemical studies have done much in the way of delineating the mechanism of megaloblastic blood formation but many questions still remain unanswered. It is presently accepted that folic acid deficiency leads directly to megaloblastic anemia it is not yet certain that vitamin B₁₂ deficiency is a direct cause of the disease. The question is still open as to whether the megaloblastic anemia which follows vitamin B₁₂ deprivation is a direct result solely of such deprivation or is partly the result of deranged folic acid metabolism caused by deficiency of vitamin B₁₂.

In this connection it is of interest that 5 to 10 mg. of folic acid daily (10 to 20 times the rough minimal daily maintenance requirement) will usually produce hematologic remission in previously untreated patients with vitamin B₁₂ deficiency whereas as much as 1000 μ g. of vitamin B₁₂ daily (perhaps 1000 times the rough minimal daily maintenance requirement) is often inadequate to produce hematologic remission in patients with primary folic acid deficiency.

backlog of RNA builds up in the cytoplasm. Biochemical evidence of blockage in pyrimidine nucleotide formation in vitamin B₁₂ deficiency continues to be gathered.²²

The megaloblast may thus be explained as a young red blood cell resulting from a prolonged phase between mitoses²³ allowing a longer time for dispersion of the chromatin throughout the nucleus²⁴ thus producing its typical finely particulate appearance. Anything which retards the rate of cell division could therefore cause megaloblasts to be produced.

The concept of the megaloblast as a product of retardation of the nuclear evolution by blockage of the mitoses of maturation has been repeatedly stressed in the literature and recently thoroughly reviewed by Cazal²⁵ and by Reisner.²⁶ It would seem that any retardation of cellular proliferation would be manifested not only in the hematopoietic system but also in other areas where the production of new cells is normally rapid. Such indeed is the case as demonstrated by the presence of megaloblastic oral gastric and vaginal epithelial cells in patients with pernicious anemia.²⁷⁻³⁰

Similar alterations in gastric cytology have been described in pernicious anemia and in sprue.³¹ Such similarities may be interpreted as the effect of inadequate absorption of vitamin B₁₂ (and folic acid) and other deficiencies. Interpreting them as a cause of the inadequate absorption would be hazardous.

In practical clinical terms megaloblastic blood formation is observed nearly always in the presence of inadequate amounts of vitamin B₁₂, folic acid or both. After the isolation of folic acid in 1943³²⁻³⁴ and vitamin B₁₂ in 1948³⁵⁻³⁸ it was possible to study the role of these two agents in nucleoprotein synthesis.

Both of these agents function in the metabolism of one carbon units: folic acid primarily as a carrier of hydroxymethyl and formyl groups³⁹ and in formimino group transfer⁴⁰; vitamin B₁₂ in the *de novo* synthesis of labile methyl groups.⁴¹ These vitamins are therefore essential in the synthesis of purines and pyrimidines⁴²⁻⁴⁴ which are integral parts of RNA and DNA.

It should be noted that arrest of mitosis of cultured chick erythrocytes and fibroblasts induced by folic acid antagonists occur in metaphase.

and kidney and sea food such as oysters and clams are especially rich in this vitamin. Other dietary sources include all meats and sea food and to a lesser degree eggs, milk and milk products.⁷⁷ Failure to ingest an adequate quantity of animal protein will eventually lead to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency.

A Vegans

Vegans are strict ovo-lacto vegetarians who subsist on a diet devoid of animal protein including dairy products and eggs. The eventual development of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency in such individuals has been documented by Wokes, Ladenoch and Sinclair.⁸⁰ The vegan whose diet is adequate in folic and ascorbic acid content provides the best instance of pure nutritional vitamin B₁₂ deficiency. The other nutritional vitamin B₁₂ deficiency states are associated with multiple other dietary deficiencies often including folic and ascorbic acids and it is difficult to determine to what extent megaloblastic anemia is caused by lack of folic and ascorbic acids in such cases (see C).

B Chronic Alcoholism

Prolonged alcoholism with a concomitant reduction in ingestion of vitamin B₁₂ containing foods may result in overt vitamin B₁₂ deficiency.⁸¹⁻⁸³ When cirrhosis is associated with the chronic alcoholism, the development of a megaloblastic anemia is more likely a reflection of folic acid deficiency than of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency.⁸⁴ (See section "Cirrhosis Associated with Chronic Alcoholism" page 52.)

C Poverty Religious Tenets Ignorance Dietary Faddism

Poverty with ingestion of a diet containing very little animal protein such as the bread, olives, beans and tomatoes which made up the diet of the Macedonians studied by Fairley et al. results in vitamin B₁₂ deficiency along with multiple other deficiencies. Abstention from animal protein on religious grounds will also produce vitamin B₁₂ deficiency if the abstention is

4 *Etiologic Classification of the Megaloblastic Anemias Due to Vitamin B₁₂ Deficiency*

AS STATED IN THE PREFACE the presence of a megaloblastic anemia is almost pathognomonic of a deficiency of vitamin B₁₂, folic acid or both. Failure adequately to ingest, absorb, utilize or retain either or both of these vitamins accounts for nearly every case of megaloblastic anemia. The small percentage of cases which have not yet been demonstrated to be a result of a deficiency in availability of either of these vitamins at the bone marrow level is almost uniformly characterized by inhibition or exhaustion of the bone marrow. It may well be that the megaloblastosis in these conditions will prove to be caused by interference with utilization or local exhaustion of the supply of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid at the bone marrow level.

Since deficiency of vitamin B₁₂ or of folic acid directly or indirectly underlies nearly all if not all of the clearly megaloblastic anemias recorded in the literature at the present time classification of these anemias in terms of etiology of the deficiency simplifies understanding, allows a methodological approach to differential diagnosis and insures appropriate therapy.

I INADEQUATE INGESTION

The daily dietary requirement of the adult for vitamin B₁₂ is approximately 1 μ g. This assumption is based on the facts that a daily parenteral dose of 1 μ g induces remission in pernicious anemia^{74, 75} and a similar amount of the vitamin provides a minimal maintenance dosage.^{71, 72, 76}

Vitamin B₁₂ is synthesized by microorganisms and is found in the tissue and fluid stores of marine and animal life which ingests such microorganisms. Therefore the sources of vitamin B₁₂ in the human diet are the protein rich animal products. Liver

of utmost clinical significance for it is interference with this pattern that produces the megaloblastic anemia resulting from failure to absorb vitamin B₁₂.

The other mechanism of absorption is independent of intrinsic factor but is primarily operative only in the presence of supraphysiologic doses of vitamin B₁₂ (that is, amounts much greater than those found in the usual diet). A significant aliquot of such doses is absorbed by a mass action effect possibly diffusion⁹⁷⁻⁹⁸. This mechanism has clinical significance primarily in oral therapy of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency and will be discussed further in that connection.

A Inadequate or Absent Secretion of Intrinsic Factor

The prototype of all the megaloblastic anemias is Addisonian pernicious anemia described as an etiologic entity by Sir Thomas Addison in 1855⁹⁹ and Biermer in 1872.¹⁰ Subsequent expansion of knowledge led to the realization that the megaloblastic anemias were not an etiologic entity but rather the similar clinical and pathologic result of various causes. At the present time the term pernicious anemia (or Addisonian pernicious anemia) is reserved in the Anglo-American literature for that megaloblastic anemia characterized by an idiopathic deficiency of Castle's intrinsic factor.⁶⁵ In other countries the term pernicious anemia is given a wider interpretation and includes all of the pure vitamin B₁₂ deficiency states.¹⁰⁰

Following hard on the heels of Minot and Murphy's Nobel prize winning discovery that a diet high in liver produced remission in 15 patients with pernicious anemia¹⁰¹ Castle and his associates⁷⁻¹¹ demonstrated that beef cattle muscle (in animal protein) contained an extrinsic (food) factor which interacted with an intrinsic factor in normal human gastric juice to yield an anti-pernicious anemia principle which restored hematology to normal when given orally to the pernicious anemia patient. The oral administration of either extrinsic factor or intrinsic factor alone had no effect.

complete¹³⁻⁸ The author has observed pure nutritional vitamin B₁₂ deficiency in a 20 year old Columbia University student from India who ate no animal protein for religious reasons. He had megaloblastic anemia, a serum vitamin B₁₂ level of 19 $\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$ (L. gracilis) and normal serum folic acid level of 8 $\text{m}\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$ (L. casei) and no urinary excretion of formiminoglutamic acid.

A similar phenomenon may sometimes be observed in elderly persons who live alone and eat little except for easy to prepare carbohydrate foods⁸⁶ and in certain dietary faddists.⁸⁷

However, all of the patients of whom the author is aware who had megaloblastic anemia associated with grossly inadequate diets had folic acid deficiency manifested usually with normal serum vitamin B₁₂ levels and very low serum folic acid levels (See section Nutritional Megaloblastic Anemia page 51.)

D Hyperthyroidism

Hyperthyroidism has been reported in association with megaloblastic anemia in two series of cases.⁸⁸⁻⁸⁹ It is possible this association may be a consequence of increased demand for and turnover of vitamin B₁₂ in thyrotoxicosis¹⁰⁻⁹¹ in the presence of a marginal dietary intake especially since the anemia may disappear after subtotal thyroidectomy.⁹ The concomitant requirement of marginal intake for vitamin B₁₂ deficiency to develop would explain the low incidence of megaloblastic anemia among thyrotoxic patients.

II DEFECTIVE ABSORPTION

The majority of cases of megaloblastic anemia due to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency fall into the various categories of this classification.

There appear to be two separate and distinct mechanisms for absorption of vitamin B₁₂.⁹²⁻⁹ With physiologic doses of vitamin B₁₂ (that is amounts of 0.1 to 2 μg) as found in the average American meal⁹³ absorption is dependent upon intrinsic factor.⁹⁴ This normal pattern of absorption is the one

deficiency^{1,7} has revealed that with the vitamin B₁₂ deficiency a variable degree of gastric atrophy develops and a variable degree of reversion of the histologic picture of the stomach toward normal accompanies the therapy. This would suggest that in some instances vitamin B₁₂ deficiency may be the cause rather than the result of gastric atrophy. Prolonged iron deficiency may also cause gastric atrophy^{1,8} eventuating in loss of intrinsic factor secretion and Addisonian pernicious anemia^{2,9}.

Addisonian pernicious anemia is itself probably not an etiologic entity but rather a syndrome of several possible etiologies which will be detailed below.

✓(1) *Hereditarily determined failure of intrinsic factor secretion.* The physiologic mechanism responsible for stimulating gastric secretion of intrinsic factor is unknown. Inadequate functioning of this mechanism or of the equally unknown enzymatic mechanism of production of intrinsic factor is responsible for the most widely studied form of pernicious anemia with the possible exception of that anemia resulting from degenerative gastric atrophy.

Hereditarily determined primary failure of gastric secretion of intrinsic factor has been inferred from the rare cases of pernicious anemia in childhood¹⁰⁻¹²⁰ pernicious anemia without achlorhydria¹²¹⁻¹³⁷ the high association coefficient of these two types of pernicious anemia the high familial tendency of the disease¹²²⁻¹³⁶ and its occurrence in monozygotic twins.¹³⁷

Harris Jones Swan and Tudhope¹³⁸ have reported the case of a 16 year old girl with megaloblastic anemia whose baseline secretion of intrinsic factor was inadequate. Parenteral administration of the powerful secretagogue and parasympathetic stimulant Carbachol (carbamylcholine chloride) induced secretion of a normal quantity of intrinsic factor. Previously Mollin Baker and Domach^{1,4} had reported a similar case in a young man in their case the deficient baseline secretion of intrinsic factor was only partly correctible by administration of Carbachol.

In some individuals the usual secretion of intrinsic factor under physiologic circumstances is low though these individuals

Two decades later vitamin B₁₂ was demonstrated to be the extrinsic factor¹⁰⁶ and also to be the anti pernicious anemia principle¹⁰⁷. Since vitamin B₁₂ is the anti pernicious anemia principle and is fully effective in treating pernicious anemia when administered parenterally, the role of intrinsic factor appears to be that of effecting the transfer of ingested vitamin B₁₂ across the intestinal mucosa and into the blood stream. Whether the vitamin B₁₂ is absorbed alone or the vitamin B₁₂ intrinsic factor combination is absorbed has not yet been determined. Favoring the latter possibility is a report of the presence in human serum of a substance similar to intrinsic factor¹⁰⁸⁻¹⁰⁹. Furthermore, there is some experimental evidence that receptors for intrinsic factor may exist in both intestinal mucosa¹⁰⁸⁻¹¹¹ and liver¹⁰⁸⁻¹¹⁰ and that intrinsic factor may be involved in the selective deposition of vitamin B₁₂ in the liver¹⁰⁸⁻¹¹⁰. This work requires confirmation and extension before general acceptance.

The chemical nature of intrinsic factor is not known since this substance has not been isolated in pure form. It is probably a mucoprotein or mucopolypeptide¹¹⁰⁻¹¹¹. In man, the glandular structure of the fundus and cardiac portions of the stomach is the site of intrinsic factor secretion¹¹⁰⁻¹¹¹. In the rat, the chief (pepsinogen) cells of the fundus glands probably are the intrinsic factor elaborating cells.¹

1 Failure of the Stomach to Adequately Secrete Intrinsic Factor

a Addisonian Pernicious Anemia

This term includes all of the megaloblastic anemias of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency resulting from inadequate secretion of intrinsic factor in which the basic cause of this deficient secretion is unknown. In these cases the gastric mucosa rarely may be histologically normal but usually shows gastric atrophy or an atrophic gastritis of varying severity.^{1-3,12}

Extensive study of patients with fish tapeworm vitamin B₁₂

longed iron^{2,6} or vitamin B₁₂^{1,7} deficiency may produce gastric atrophy that atrophy passes through stages of gastritis before being established. Serial studies of the gastric mucosa in large numbers of living patients will be needed to clarify these relationships.

b Lesions Which Destroy the Gastric Mucosa

Ingested corrosives^{2,8} linitis plastica of non neoplastic origin^{1,3} and extensive neoplastic disease¹ may each destroy the intrinsic factor secreting glandular lining of the stomach and thereby eventually produce a megaloblastic anemia due to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency.

Neoplastic disease producing megaloblastic anemia must be separated from gastric carcinoma arising in patients with pernicious anemia. The incidence of gastric carcinoma in autopsied patients with both pernicious anemia and gastric atrophy is about 10 to 12 per cent; this is more than three times the expected occurrence of gastric carcinoma at autopsy^{1,3,11}. The high coincidence of gastric carcinoma and pernicious anemia is probably a consequence of the fact that both conditions frequently arise from a common genetically determined gastric atrophy^{14,15} or perhaps that the gastric atrophy which results in pernicious anemia is also associated with intestinal metaplasia in the body area of the stomach¹ which may be a precancerous lesion. In a given patient with carcinoma of the fundus or body of the stomach with gastric atrophy and pernicious anemia it is impossible at present to determine *post hoc* which came first.

c Endocrine Disorders

Pituitary and gonadal insufficiency have been reported to produce infrequently a pernicious anemia like picture leading to the suggestion that a hormonal inadequacy may lead to degeneration of the intrinsic factor producing cells^{1,6}.

In the few cases of hypothyroidism in which a megaloblastic anemia has appeared and causes of megaloblastic anemia unrelated to hypothyroidism have been excluded it has appeared

may have normal serum vitamin B₁₂ levels and histologically normal gastric mucosa. Carbachol stimulation evoked normal secretion of intrinsic factor in a group of such subjects but one of them was eventually unable to secrete intrinsic factor even after such stimulation and was then classified as a case of pernicious anemia^{139, 140}. A possibly similar such case is now under observation¹⁴¹.

Study of patients diagnosed as having pernicious anemia in the 1930's revealed that many had small amounts of intrinsic factor in their gastric juice¹⁴. It is not possible as yet to delineate the exact etiology of the megaloblastic anemia resulting from idiopathic (and most probably hereditary^{143, 144}) failure of secretion of intrinsic factor: the evidence at present indicates it results from an enzymatic defect in the production of intrinsic factor resulting in inadequate production and eventual total cessation of production. Primary inadequacy of the *stimulus* to intrinsic factor secretion has not yet been excluded as an etiologic factor however.

(2) *Hereditarily determined degenerative gastric atrophy*. A genetically determined tendency to develop gastric atrophy with aging has been well documented^{143, 145} as has the frequent (but not uniform) association of gastric atrophy and failure of intrinsic factor secretion^{146, 143, 147}. The possible relation of this entity to (1) above and (3) below is undetermined but its frequency of occurrence is high.

(3) *Gastric atrophy as the end stage of superficial inflammatory gastritis* *superficial gastritis with atrophy*. Pernicious anemia has been observed in gastric atrophy resulting from chronic gastritis¹⁴⁸ and associated with superficial gastritis with atrophy, atrophic gastritis of varying severity and gastric atrophy in which relationship to gastritis was not established^{1, 14}. Whether these different types of lesions in adult pernicious anemia are stages in the same pathological process and closely related to (1) and (2) above or distinct etiologic entities falling into separate categories of atrophic gastritis and gastric atrophy remains to be seen¹. It has already been mentioned that pro

Previously ¹⁶⁴ 5 patients had been reported with megaloblastic anemia developing from 2 to 12 years after subtotal gastrectomy accompanied by inadequate vitamin B₁₂ absorption correctible by oral administration of intrinsic factor. Of these 5 patients 1 had atrophy of the gastric mucosa as demonstrated by examination of a gastric biopsy despite the fact that such atrophy was not present at the time of gastrectomy. The authors of that report noted that the patients were originally operated upon because of gastric ulcer which may itself have led to gastritis and eventual atrophy with loss of intrinsic factor secretion.

Loewenstein ¹⁶⁵ noted low vitamin B₁₂ absorption in 3 of 22 patients who had distal subtotal gastrectomy. All 3 patients were tested for B₁₂ absorption ability more than 6 years after operation whereas most of the other 19 patients were tested less than 6 years after operation. None of the 3 patients with low B₁₂ absorption had macrocytic anemia in fact 2 had hypochromic microcytic anemia associated with a low serum iron concentration i.e. iron deficiency anemia. All 3 had gastrojejunostomies after their gastric resection.

Still more recently ¹⁶⁶ decreased absorption of vitamin B₁₂ correctible by oral administration of intrinsic factor was found in 4 of 19 patients who had had subtotal gastrectomy followed by gastrojejunostomy but in none of 15 patients who had had subtotal gastrectomy followed by gastroduodenostomy. None of the 34 subjects had anemia. The surgical specimens at gastrectomy of 3 of the 4 patients with subsequently decreased vitamin B₁₂ absorption had normal gastric mucosa.

Putting these various findings together it seems that following distal subtotal gastrectomy especially if it is followed by gastrojejunostomy rather than gastroduodenostomy gastric secretion of intrinsic factor may be diminished ¹⁶⁷ In the course of a number of years atrophy may develop in the gastric remnant with loss of residual ability to secrete intrinsic factor ¹⁶⁸ Mild vitamin B₁₂ deficiency may occur not infrequently but severe megaloblastic anemia is a direct result of the distal

to result from defective intestinal absorption of vitamin B₁₂ unrelated to secretion of intrinsic factor.¹⁻⁷ However there may be a depressed secretion of intrinsic factor in some cases.¹⁵⁷⁻¹⁵⁸

Addison's disease has also on rare occasions been reported in association with pernicious anemia.^{1-10, 21, 22} The relation of these two conditions is obscure.

2 Gastrectomy

a Total

Total gastrectomy removes the source of intrinsic factor¹⁶¹ and will invariably eventually produce megaloblastic anemia due to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency if appropriate prophylaxis with vitamin B₁₂ is not instituted.³⁰ The period of time which will elapse before development of anemia will depend on the amount of the body stores of vitamin B₁₂ and on the dietary content of vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid.

b Subtotal

(1) *Proximal* Proximal subtotal gastrectomy with esophagoantrostomy may ablate the intrinsic factor secreting glands to such an extent as to produce vitamin B₁₂ deficiency.¹⁶ Less extensive proximal subtotal gastrectomy is seldom followed by inadequate intrinsic factor secretion.¹⁶³

(2) *Distal* Distal subtotal gastrectomy is performed much more frequently than proximal subtotal gastrectomy. In a survey of over 1500 patients who had this operation performed MacLean¹⁶ found that only 9 patients subsequently developed a megaloblastic anemia associated with a hemoglobin below 10 Gm./100 ml. In every one of these 9 patients histologic review of the resected portion of the stomach demonstrated a gastric atrophy. This suggested that these 9 patients would eventually have developed a megaloblastic anemia due to lack of intrinsic factor even if subtotal gastrectomy had not been performed and that the subtotal gastrectomy had no relation to the development of the megaloblastic anemia.

and very high urinary uropepsin levels. The anemia responded to intramuscular injections of vitamin B₁₂ but not to oral administration of the vitamin together with intrinsic factor. Radioactive vitamin B₁₂ studies demonstrated extremely poor intestinal absorption not influenced by addition of intrinsic factor, normal gastric juice or bowel sterilization with tetracycline. Since five hundred ml of the patient's gastric juice plus vitamin B₁₂ and intrinsic factor given orally to a woman with a subtotal gastrectomy and with normal B₁₂ absorption depressed her absorption of B₁₂ by 50% the authors concluded that this patient's gastric juice in sufficient quantity will inhibit the absorption of B₁₂ from the intestinal tract causing a variant of pernicious anemia.

However, there is evidence that large amounts of intrinsic factor given orally such as the 500 ml of gastric juice plus additional intrinsic factor in the form of a hog intrinsic factor concentrate which was given to the woman with a subtotal gastrectomy may inhibit the absorption of vitamin B₁₂ in any recipient.^{11, 169, 173} Therefore production of inhibited absorption with such a large dose of intrinsic factor-containing material does not constitute an argument in favor of the existence of an intrinsic factor inhibitor in the gastric juice that was given. Furthermore, if such an inhibitor did exist, it might be expected that it could be overcome (although this is not necessarily true) by a large dose of intrinsic factor. The authors report, however, that massive dosage of intrinsic factor given orally did not correct the absorptive defect.

The validity of the contention that the patient's gastric juice contains an intrinsic factor inhibitor cannot yet be considered proved. A mild form of coeliac disease or a selective malabsorption for vitamin B₁₂ remain major diagnostic possibilities. A search for evidences of malabsorption for other agents remains to be reported, as does the result of oral administration of a moderate amount (25 to 100 ml) of the patient's gastric juice with radioactive vitamin B₁₂ to a recipient with known addi

subtotal gastrectomy uncomplicated by other factors is rare. A complicating factor might be the occasional development of a malabsorption syndrome after partial gastrectomy.^{16 a} In this connection there is a greater rapidity of gastric emptying and intestinal transit after subtotal gastrectomy. This is more marked after a Billroth II procedure (gastrojejunostomy) than after a Billroth I operation (gastroduodenostomy).^{16 b}

If the absorption of iron occurs chiefly in the duodenal region,^{13 16a 16b} iron deficiency should be expected to occur more frequently when subtotal gastrectomy is followed by gastrojejunostomy than when it is followed by gastroduodenostomy. Long continued iron deficiency itself may then lead to gastric atrophy and intrinsic factor deficiency.^{18 19 167}

When any patient undergoes subtotal gastrectomy the extent of the gastric remnant should be clearly and precisely recorded as should the appearance of the mucosa of the resected portion. The patient must be closely checked for the possible development of iron deficiency. His ability to absorb a test dose of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ should be determined about two months after operation.¹⁶ If poor and correctible by oral administration of intrinsic factor the patient should be treated for the rest of his life just as if he had pernicious anemia. If his ability to absorb vitamin B₁₂ is normal the patient should have semiannual examinations of his peripheral blood smear and determination of his hematocrit, hemoglobin, and red cell count along with serum iron and vitamin B₁₂ determinations if available. It is probably in the patient's best interest to continue such semiannual examinations for at least 10 years after the subtotal gastrectomy. As stated previously, however, the incidence of megaloblastic anemia after subtotal gastrectomy is quite low even in patients followed for a number of years.

3 Intrinsic Factor Inhibitor in Gastric Secretion

A recent preliminary report¹⁶⁸ presented an unusual case of pernicious anemia diagnosed in a male at the age of 13 months with a 25 year follow up. The patient consistently had free acid

as proved by direct instillation of vitamin B₁₂ into the colon¹⁴ and the fact that the stools of patients with pernicious anemia contain large amounts of vitamin B₁₂ synthesized by bacteria in the colon which would produce remission of the anemia if they could be absorbed.¹⁸ Presumably a similar bacterial flora producing vitamin B₁₂ is present in the stools of vegans who secrete intrinsic factor but still develop vitamin B₁₂ deficiency.

Since the small intestine provides the only physiologically significant absorptive surface for vitamin B₁₂, it is clear why any derangement in this portion of the alimentary canal may produce vitamin B₁₂ deficiency disease if the derangement is of sufficient chronicity so that the body stores of available vitamin B₁₂ are exhausted.

Study of individuals who had undergone total gastrectomy indicate that such stores become depleted to a sufficient extent to produce a macrocytosis in approximately one or two years with anemia appearing in another one or two years and a megaloblastic marrow shortly thereafter.¹⁶ The major site of storage of vitamin B₁₂ appears to be the liver^{3, 18} in which the biologic half life of vitamin B₁₂ is approximately a year.²⁷

In most patients with a small intestinal disorder of sufficient degree to produce defective absorption of vitamin B₁₂, oral administration of supplementary intrinsic factor is not able to improve the absorption.^{18, 101}

It is not easy to predict the time of onset of overt clinical vitamin B₁₂ deficiency in any patient with an absorptive defect because the amount of the body stores, the dietary intake and the metabolic turnover of vitamin B₁₂ varies from person to person. In addition failure to absorb vitamin B₁₂ is usually not absolute and varies from time to time in the same individual.

1 Malabsorption Syndrome

Malabsorption syndrome is a term applied to a group of metabolic disorders in which multiple defects of intestinal absorption play a prominent part.^{12, 13, 101a}

sonian pernicious anemia both in the absence and in the presence of added hog intrinsic factor concentrate

Nevertheless the speculation that some individuals may have an inhibitor of intrinsic factor in their gastric juice is interesting and worth keeping in mind. There is some evidence that such an inhibitor may exist in the form of degraded or incomplete intrinsic factor unable to bind vitamin B₁₂ but able to attach to intestinal receptors and block their uptake of intrinsic factor.¹³

B Small Intestinal Disorder

Variable degrees of reduced absorption of vitamin B₁₂ and of folic acid may occur with any structural or functional disorder affecting the small intestine.

The absorption of physiologic amounts of vitamin B₁₂ occurs primarily in the small intestine. This has been demonstrated by instillation of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ through an intestinal tube directly into the duodenum, jejunum, and ileum.¹⁴ It is probable that no significant absorption occurs from the stomach since oral administration of normal gastric juice with vitamin B₁₂ to gastrectomized patients is not only effective but may actually produce greater vitamin B₁₂ absorption than that observed on similar treatment of patients with pernicious anemia whose stomachs are intact.¹ Bypassing the stomach by duodenal intubation¹⁷⁴ or timed release capsules¹⁷⁶ has also resulted in greater vitamin B₁₂ absorption than that observed when the stomach was not bypassed. Possible explanations for this phenomenon include binding of vitamin B₁₂ by materials in the stomach that have no intrinsic factor activity^{119, 13, 177, 1} and the adverse effect of acid pH on vitamin B₁₂ absorption.^{11, 150}

It is probable that most vitamin B₁₂ absorption in man occurs in the ileum^{140, 181, 18} as it does in the rat^{15, 18} and the dog.¹⁸⁶ There is practically no absorption of vitamin B₁₂ by patients who have had all their small intestine except the jejunum resected.^{140, 181}

No significant absorption of vitamin B₁₂ occurs from the colon

cortical steroids.⁶⁷ The mechanism of this correction is unknown. Response of megaloblastic anemia to administration of adrenocortical steroids has been observed in some cases of adult coeliac disease and of pernicious anemia.^{14, 1} Here too the mechanism of action of the steroids in terms of vitamin B₁₂ (or folic acid) absorption is unknown.

Permanent correction of the absorptive defect usually follows effective treatment of the folic acid deficiency which results in regeneration⁹ of the intestinal villi⁶³ if the damage has not persisted for such a prolonged period as to be irreversible and generally a complete recovery of the patient.^{64, 16, 17}

For these reasons and because tropical sprue does not respond to a gluten free diet and often demonstrates a return of the folic acid excretion test to normal with treatment,⁶⁴ tropical sprue is considered here as it is by many authorities^{1, 13, 63, 64, 17, 18} to differ from nontropical sprue. In the latter condition the villi do not regenerate,⁶³ actual cure does not occur,¹⁹ the patient often responds to a gluten free diet,^{19, 19a} and the folic acid excretion test remains abnormal after treatment.⁶⁴ It should be noted however that some investigators believe that the dissimilarities are too superficial to warrant definition of tropical and nontropical sprue as separate entities.^{9, 1}

(2) *Childhood coeliac disease, adult coeliac disease (idiopathic steatorrhea, nontropical sprue)*. These conditions are believed to be the expression of the same basic defect at different ages.^{64, 18} The villous atrophy is irreversible,^{63, 1} and cure is not yet possible.^{19, 4}

This entity is probably the final result of a hereditary constitutional defect in metabolism transmitted as a dominant trait of variable penetrance and expressivity.^{14, 18, 6-9} It has been stated that pernicious anemia is the final result of a genetically determined progressive atrophy of the chief cells of gastric mucosa while coeliac disease and idiopathic steatorrhea result from an analogous atrophy of the crypt cells of the intestinal mucosa.⁶³

a *Primary*

Primary malabsorption syndrome includes those generalized absorption defects of unknown etiology in which varying degrees of atrophy of the intestinal villi are present⁹⁰⁻⁹⁵ The possible existence of receptors for intrinsic factor in the small intestine^{111, 111, 96} suggests a direct relationship between the degree of damage of the intestinal villi (with concomitant reduction in number of receptors) and the degree of inability to absorb vitamin B₁₂. A similar relationship may exist for folic acid absorption. The variable degree and reversibility of the atrophy of the intestinal villi may explain in part the similar variable degree and reversibility of the absorptive defect for vitamin B₁.^{190, 191, 90, 908}

Another factor which must be considered in evaluating the absorptive defect for vitamin B₁ in both primary and secondary malabsorption syndromes is the dependence of intrinsic factor action on calcium.¹¹² Removal of calcium by fatty acids in the form of insoluble soaps may explain the poor vitamin B₁ absorption in some patients with steatorrhea⁹⁹ although in one series^{1, 8} of 10 such patients peroral administration of 7 to 10 Gm. of calcium lactate had no significant effect on absorption of concurrently administered radio B₁.

The various conditions forming the group characterized as the *primary malabsorption syndrome* are differentiated from each other on clinical grounds such as age, place of residence, severity, response to treatment, and reversibility of the disease.¹⁹¹

Although the primary malabsorption states frequently are accompanied by considerably impaired absorption of vitamin B₁, they are generally more intimately related to folic acid deficiency and will be discussed further in that connection.

(1) *Tropical sprue* This steatorrhea syndrome seen in the tropics is probably most often the result of prolonged dietary deficiency of folic acid.^{10, 1} The associated absorptive defect for vitamin B₁ is sometimes correctible by maintaining the patient on adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH)¹³ or adreno

(5) *Other conditions characterized by chronically disturbed intestinal function* Macrocytic anemia has been reported in such conditions associated with chronic intestinal dysfunction as chronic pancreatic disease³⁹ chronic dysentery⁴⁰ hypothyroidism¹⁷ and mesenteric vascular disease.⁴¹ In the latter two conditions resolution of the metabolic disorder and healing of the intestinal lesion respectively were associated with a return to normal of the intestinal absorption of vitamin B₁₂ which had been previously demonstrated to be greatly reduced. There is some evidence in rats that the absorptive mechanism in the ileum for vitamin B₁₂ is slowed down by hypothyroidism.⁴² Decreased secretion of intrinsic factor may also occur with lack of thyroid hormone.

2 Specific Malabsorption for Vitamin B₁₂

a *Due to Long Term Ingestion of Calcium Chelating Agents*

The mechanism of intrinsic factor action in the intestine appears to be calcium dependent.^{11, 12, 13, 14} The amount of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ excreted in the urine of normal subjects during the course of a Schilling test after short term administration of calcium chelating agents such as sodium phytate or ethylene diamine tetraacetate (EDTA) is considerably decreased.^{10, 43} In some patients with steatorrhea oral administration of calcium lactate increases the otherwise small amount of vitamin B₁₂ absorbed.⁴⁰ In most cases it has no effect however.¹⁸

Five patients receiving orally administered sodium phytate for periods from 19 to 44 months as treatment for hypercalcemia associated with renal stones⁴⁴ were investigated through the courtesy of Dr P. H. Henneman. They were all found to have decreased serum vitamin B₁₂ levels increasingly marked in direct proportion to the length of therapy: macroovalocytosis, an increased amount of hypersegmentation of the nuclei of the polymorphonuclear leukocytes, and diminished position and/or vibration sense in the toes.^{10, 45}

b *Secondary*

Secondary malabsorption syndrome includes those clinical entities which produce gross pathologic alteration in the structure or function of the small intestine of sufficient degree and duration to result in deranged absorptive capacity. The degree of the derangement is a major factor in determining whether vitamin B₁₂ (and folic acid) deficiency will be produced.

(1) *Regional ileitis* Megaloblastic anemia is a not infrequent result of this condition³⁰ which frequently produces grossly deficient vitamin B₁₂ absorption. In one study 42 patients out of 80 had low serum vitamin B₁₂ levels and the impaired absorption could almost always be restored to normal by steroid therapy.⁹

(2) *Strictures or anastomoses of the small bowel* Megaloblastic anemia has been observed to follow the development of single or multiple small bowel strictures usually in the ileum and intestinal anastomoses.³¹⁻³³ The latter have included enteroenterostomies, enterocolostomies, gastrojejunal fistulae and gastrocolic fistulae.

Defective absorption of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid or both is demonstrable in a significant percentage of such patients.¹ However in the majority of such patients when microcytic anemia develops it appears to be the result of intestinal stasis producing an abnormal bacterial flora and the blind loop syndrome rather than a secondary malabsorption syndrome.²³¹⁻²³³

(3) *Intestinal resection* Intestinal resections as performed for jejunoileitis or superior mesenteric artery occlusions may result in failure adequately to absorb vitamin B₁₂.¹⁹¹⁻¹⁹⁴

(4) *Malignancies and granulomatous lesions involving the small intestine* Lymphosarcoma, reticulum cell sarcoma, lymphogranulomatosis and intestinal lipodystrophy are among the conditions which may produce a malabsorption syndrome with compromise of vitamin B₁₂ absorption to a variable degree.³⁻³⁵

(5) *Other conditions characterized by chronically disturbed intestinal function* Macrocytic anemia has been reported in such conditions associated with chronic intestinal dysfunction as chronic pancreatic disease³⁹ chronic dysentery⁴⁰ hypothyroidism^{1,7} and mesenteric vascular disease⁴⁸ In the latter two conditions resolution of the metabolic disorder and healing of the intestinal lesion respectively were associated with a return to normal of the intestinal absorption of vitamin B₁₂ which had been previously demonstrated to be greatly reduced There is some evidence in rats that the absorptive mechanism in the ileum for vitamin B₁₂ is slowed down by hypothyroidism⁴¹ Decreased secretion of intrinsic factor may also occur with lack of thyroid hormone

2 Specific Malabsorption for Vitamin B₁₂

a *Due to Long Term Ingestion of Calcium Chelating Agents*

The mechanism of intrinsic factor act on in the intestine appears to be calcium dependent^{11,12,14} The amount of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ excreted in the urine of normal subjects during the course of a Schilling test after short term administration of calcium chelating agents such as sodium phytate or ethylene diamine tetraacetate (EDTA) is considerably decreased^{4,42} In some patients with steatorrhea oral administration of calcium lactate increases the otherwise small amount of vitamin B₁₂ absorbed⁴³ In most cases it has no effect however^{1,8}

Five patients receiving orally administered sodium phytate for periods from 19 to 14 months as treatment for hypercalcaemia associated with renal stones⁴⁴ were investigated through the courtesy of Dr P H Henneman They were all found to have decreased serum vitamin B₁₂ levels increasingly marked in direct proportion to the length of therapy macroovalocytosis an increased amount of hypersegmentation of the nuclei of the polymorphonuclear leukocytes and diminished position and or vibration sense in the toes^{46,4}

Examination of the bone marrow morphology in each of the 5 patients revealed the presence of some intermediate megaloblasts and some large but not quite giant metamyelocytes.

The inference from these studies would seem to be that patients receiving prolonged oral therapy with oral calcium chelating agents will eventually develop a full blown megaloblastic anemia due to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency if not prophylactically treated by injection of the vitamin at regular intervals. However absorption of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ in 2 μ g doses by the 5 patients on prolonged phytate therapy appeared to be normal.¹⁰ Since it was not determined that the radioactivity absorbed was that of the vitamin B₁₂ rather than that of a breakdown product of the vitamin and since other possibilities also could explain the discrepant results further study is needed to determine clearly whether or not long term ingestion of calcium chelating agents will sufficiently restrict B₁₂ absorption eventually to cause full blown megaloblastic anemia. All the evidence except for the normal absorption of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ suggests that overt megaloblastic anemia will in fact eventually develop in such cases.

b *Due to Absence of Intestinal Receptors for Intrinsic Factor*

According to a recent hypothesis^{110, 11} which coincides with the views of various workers^{113, 11, 11} receptors for intrinsic factor exist in the small intestine and play a vital role in the absorption of physiologic amounts of vitamin B₁₂. It would be logical to suspect that if such receptors exist patients might be found who are unable to absorb vitamin B₁₂ because of a congenital or acquired reduction or absence of these receptors independent of any other absorptive defects.

In a search for such patients the author has seen 7 individuals with megaloblastic anemia serum vitamin B₁₂ levels below 100 μ g/ml inability to absorb a 2 μ g oral dose of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ either alone or with added hog intrinsic factor concentrate intrinsic factor secretion appearing to be

normal as measured by in vitro assay of gastric juice and no steatorrhea diarrhea or other signs or symptoms of malabsorption syndrome

Two of these patients developed steatorrhea during fat balance studies and were classified as cases of adult coeliac disease

A third B C a 70 year old woman of Puerto Rican origin was extensively studied at the Mount Sinai Hospital Examination included a full battery of studies for possible malabsorption of agents other than vitamin B₁₂ by Dr D Adlersberg's group Glucose fat vitamin A and xylose tolerance tests fat balance studies gastrointestinal tract roentgenograms and fluoroscopy plasma prothrombin and serum calcium phosphorus alkaline phosphatase and folic acid were all normal

This woman was one of the patients we made available to Drs Lohby Cooperman and Teller for their studies using their method of histidine loading⁵¹¹ they found no biochemical folic acid deficiency (as manifested by excretions of formiminoglutamic acid in the urine which were well within the normal range after many repeated histidine loading doses)

There was free acid in her gastric juice after but not before histamine stimulation The only suggestion of an absorptive abnormality other than for vitamin B₁₂ was a low serum carotene level of 51 μg per cent This could have been explained on the basis of her poor diet⁶⁰ but it could also be a reflection of an otherwise completely hidden malabsorption syndrome

The fourth patient M C was studied at the Mount Sinai Hospital almost exactly as patient B C (*vide supra*) This 71 year old woman of Puerto Rican origin had a serum carotene level of 13 μg per cent and a serum folic acid level of 2.4 $\text{m}\mu\text{g}$ ml indicative of folic acid depletion despite the absence of formiminoglutamic acid in her urine (histidine loading was not done in this case) All other studies yielded normal results While her low serum carotene could be explained by her poor diet it is harder to explain the low serum folic acid level She is being further studied to delineate more clearly the condi

tion. The present working diagnosis is malabsorption syndrome but dietary folic acid deficiency plus a specific absorptive defect for vitamin B₁₂ due to lack of intestinal receptors for intrinsic factor remains an alternate possibility.

The final 3 patients have been partially studied for absorptive defects other than for vitamin B₁₂ including three dry fat balance studies with no such defects found. This was also true of other cases alluded to in the literature.^{17,18,19}

One or more of the 5 above noted cases may eventually be definitively proved to have solely a specific absorptive defect for vitamin B₁₂ due to a reduction or absence of intestinal receptors for intrinsic factor or of whatever other small intestinal mechanism or mechanisms which may be involved in vitamin B₁₂ absorption. In all of these 5 cases repetitive studies at varying intervals of time are required to rule out an occult generalized malabsorption syndrome whose various other parameters may be only intermittently demonstrable. Other cases of possible specific malabsorption for vitamin B₁₂ are being closely followed elsewhere.⁴

At present it may be said that specific malabsorption for vitamin B₁₂ does exist but its existence is an entity independent of adult coeliac disease (and possibly other etiologic entities in the group of generalized malabsorption syndromes) cannot be considered proved until extensive longitudinal studies over a period of years have been carried out or until jejunal biopsies are obtained.

It must be remembered that some patients with malabsorption syndrome may not demonstrate malabsorption for fats even on serially repeated studies and may show malabsorption only for glucose on one occasion only for vitamin A on another occasion etc.

Unfortunately none of our five patients had jejunal biopsy. Demonstration of a normal jejunal mucosa in these individuals would effectively exclude idiopathic steatorrhea and help to establish definitively the diagnosis of specific malabsorption for vitamin B₁₂.

C Competition for Vitamin B₁₂ by Intestinal Parasites or Bacteria

1 Fish Tapeworm (*Diphyllobothrium Latum*)

Next to Addisonian pernicious anemia fish tapeworm anemia is probably the most thoroughly investigated of all the vitamin B₁₂ deficiency states.¹⁰⁰ It has been directly demonstrated both in vitro⁴⁶ and in vivo⁴⁷ that the fish tapeworm competes directly with the intrinsic factor of the host for available vitamin B₁₂ in the intestine.⁴⁸

The higher the parasite is located the more likely it is to interfere with vitamin B₁₂ absorption⁴⁹ since the vitamin has less prolonged contact with the intestine and therefore less chance of being absorbed prior to being taken up by the tapeworm.

Other factors influencing the relative uptake of vitamin B₁₂ by the parasite as compared to the host are the number and size of the worms,¹⁰⁰⁻⁴⁷ the rapidity of growth and of egg production by the worms⁴⁷ and the quantity of intrinsic factor produced by the host.⁴⁸ Vitamin B₁₂ bound to intrinsic factor is unavailable to the parasite⁴⁶ but is available to the host.

Vitamin B₁₂ in high concentration appears to be an essential constituent of the fish tapeworm. The concentration of vitamin B₁₂ per gram of dried worm is from 1.33 to 3 µg—easily enough to provide treatment in pernicious anemia. Although the concentration of vitamin B₁₂ in *Ascaris lumbricoides* is of the same magnitude vitamin B₁₂ deficiency has not with certainty been found in cases of infestation with this parasite—perhaps because of differences in quantity and biologic properties of these parasites as compared to the fish tapeworm. Other parasites such as *Taenia saginata* contain considerably less vitamin B₁₂ and do not appear capable of causing vitamin B₁₂ deficiency.¹⁰⁰

2 Bacteria: The Blind Loop Syndrome

Megaloblastic anemia may appear in association with the presence of a surgically created blind loop of intestine⁴⁵¹ in the presence of the multiple small blind loops of massive small in

tion The present working diagnosis is malabsorption syndrome but dietary folic acid deficiency plus a specific absorptive defect for vitamin B₁₂ due to lack of intestinal receptors for intrinsic factor remains an alternate possibility

The final 3 patients have been partially studied for absorptive defects other than for vitamin B₁₂ including three dry fat balance studies with no such defects found This was also true of other cases alluded to in the literature¹⁷³⁻⁴

One or more of the 5 above noted cases may eventually be definitively proved to have solely a specific absorptive defect for vitamin B₁₂ due to a reduction or absence of intestinal receptors for intrinsic factor or of whatever other small intestinal mechanism or mechanisms which may be involved in vitamin B₁₂ absorption In all of these 5 cases repetitive studies at varying intervals of time are required to rule out an occult generalized malabsorption syndrome whose various other parameters may be only intermittently demonstrable Other cases of possible specific malabsorption for vitamin B₁₂ are being closely followed elsewhere⁴

At present it may be said that specific malabsorption for vitamin B₁₂ does exist but its existence is an entity independent of adult coeliac disease (and possibly other etiologic entities in the group of generalized malabsorption syndromes) cannot be considered proved until extensive longitudinal studies over a period of years have been carried out or until jejunal biopsies are obtained

It must be remembered that some patients with malabsorption syndrome may not demonstrate malabsorption for fats even on serially repeated studies and may show malabsorption only for glucose on one occasion only for vitamin A on another occasion etc

Unfortunately none of our five patients had jejunal biopsy Demonstration of a normal jejunal mucosa in these individuals would effectively exclude idiopathic steatorrhea and help to establish definitively the diagnosis of specific malabsorption for vitamin B₁₂

which the patients ceased to respond to parenteral vitamin B₁₂ therapy and showed a return to megaloblastic hematopoiesis after developing extensive gastric carcinoma.^{43, 49, 50} The author has observed a possibly similar phenomenon in a 260 pound female patient with pernicious anemia in remission who developed carcinoma of the breast with extensive metastases to bones.⁵¹ She went into hematologic relapse despite continuation of her maintenance dosage of 60 μg of vitamin B₁₂ parenterally at monthly intervals. The patient died before it could be determined whether the hematologic picture could be improved by administration of larger amounts of vitamin B₁₂ or administration of folic acid; the serum vitamin B₁₂ level just prior to death was 620 $\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$ by L. Leishman assay (a normal result) but her red cell B₁₂ level was only 180 $\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$ (In the normal subject serum and red cell vitamin B₁₂ levels are roughly the same). It is not known whether the phenomenon of relapse despite continuation of the maintenance dosage of vitamin B₁₂ in these patients was a reflection of inability to utilize vitamin B₁₂ in increased demand for the vitamin or yet another cause such as folic acid deficiency. In the light of present knowledge the latter possibility seems most likely. (See section Parasitization of Folic Acid by Malignant Tissue page 59.)

Recent experimental evidence in rats that vitamin B₁₂ may be a co factor in amino acid incorporation into protein^{52, 53} has been accompanied by demonstration of inhibition of protein biosynthesis by the anilide of the monocarboxylic acid of vitamin B₁₂ which seemed to function as an anti-vitamin B₁₂ in this reaction.⁵⁴

Future studies using anti-vitamin B₁₂ agents as antimetabolites to reduce the speed of neoplastic growth in humans much as the antifolic acid agents are now used may produce clear cut cases of inability to utilize vitamin B₁₂. Preliminary studies^{55, 56} suggest this possibility may soon be realized with the use of altered vitamin B₁₂ molecules which may act by blocking the vitamin B₁₂ transport and storage systems by competitive inhibition of vitamin B₁₂ or both.

testinal diverticulosis or with intestinal stricture or anastomosis³¹⁻³³ In such cases impaired absorption of vitamin B₁₂ has been repeatedly demonstrated

The defective vitamin B₁ absorption may be greatly improved during administration of one of the tetracycline group of antibiotics¹ but not by neomycin or sulfisoxazole³³ The response to antibiotics, the avidity of certain strains of intestinal bacteria for vitamin B₁³ and the evidence from autopsy studies³³ and animal experiments^{4,7} that an abnormal small intestinal bacterial flora proliferating in the stagnant loops of small intestine was an invariable occurrence when macrocytic anemia developed all led to the concept that stasis of intestinal content with abnormal bacterial growth results in impaired absorption of vitamin B₁ and possibly of folic acid possibly by diversion from the host to the bacteria⁵⁶ In some cases the major deficiency may be of folic acid rather than vitamin B₁

While the mechanism of this phenomenon may be direct competition for available vitamin B₁ and folic acid in the intestine by the bacteria and the host this mechanism is not as clearly demonstrated in the blind loop syndrome as it is in fish tapeworm anemia One bit of evidence suggesting a possible role for the tetracyclines other than destruction of abnormal intestinal flora is a report of slow but definite remission of pernicious anemia on administration of chlortetracycline⁷ This may have been spontaneous remission but more study of this phenomenon may be useful

In certain megaloblastic anemias in Kenya dramatic improvement has been reported after treatment with oral penicillin alone⁸ It was speculated that the high carbohydrate low animal protein diet of these natives might produce an abnormal small bowel bacterial flora

III INADEQUATE UTILIZATION

A Inability to Utilize Vitamin B₁

The existence of this entity has not yet been established with certainty Cases of pernicious anemia have been reported in

istered dose within 24 hours (Normal persons excreted 0 to 10 per cent under similar conditions) After giving normal plasma the urinary excretion of the same dose of labeled vitamin decreased to 24 per cent Temporary remission could be produced by a single intramuscular dose of 90 μg of vitamin B₁₂ or by the intravenous administration of 250 ml of human plasma The patient had unexplained unresponsiveness to weekly injections of crude liver extract for 18 years prior to demonstration of her response to normal plasma administration

In a recent personal communication Horrigan provided further information regarding the patient including the following

Prior to treatment her serum vitamin B₁₂ level was only 9 μg /ml (E. gracilis assay performed by V. Lear at Thorndike Memorial Laboratory) confirming the existence of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency After three successive responses to plasma the patient became refractory to it Her vitamin B₁₂ requirement to maintain remission gradually rose to daily injections of 1000 μg Iron deficiency anemia developed A bleeding hiatus hernia was found and operatively repaired The patient died a month after the operation after a few days of rapidly increasing icterus and terminal bleeding from all orifices At postmortem examination the findings were multiple endocrine tumors (chromophobe adenoma of pituitary, adenomatosis of parathyroid, islet cell tumors of pancreas, islet cell tumor of jejunum), cortical hyperplasia of adrenals, slight nephrocalcinosis and acute massive distention of intestine

The exact mechanisms of her defect with respect to vitamin B₁₂ were never worked out A possible relationship to an occult malabsorption syndrome or to one or more of her endocrine abnormalities was not demonstrated prior to her death Study of other such cases when found may throw considerable light on the mechanism of vitamin B₁₂ binding transport and storage

B Parasitization by Fetus

Serum vitamin B₁₂ levels gradually decrease during pregnancy and vitamin B₁₂ levels of umbilical cord blood are invariably higher than those of the mother obtained at the same time ^{60 61a} Supraphysiologic (1000 μg) oral doses of vitamin B₁₂ may be absorbed at a greater than normal rate by pregnant women ²⁰ but depressed absorption of physiologic doses has been reported ²¹ This depressed absorption may be due to decreased secretion of intrinsic factor it is known that gastric secretion of acid and pepsin falls during pregnancy ³

Despite the lowering during pregnancy serum vitamin B₁₂ levels generally remain within normal limits This is not always true however ^{74 7 45,46} Megaloblastic anemia rarely occurs during pregnancy when nutrition is adequate ^{3 6} when it occurs with poor nutrition it is more frequently due to primary deficiency of folic acid than of vitamin B₁₂ ^{10 77 81}

The combination of a marginal vitamin B₁₂ intake and parasitization of available vitamin B₁₂ by the fetus could lead to a vitamin B₁₂ deficiency in the mother Such a deficiency has not been frequently reported but does occur ^{74 7 45,46}

C Inability to Retain Absorbed Vitamin B₁₂

Most of the vitamin B₁₂ in human serum is bound to serum proteins ⁸ primarily to an alpha 1 globulin ^{8 83} It appears from studies in vitro that amounts of vitamin B₁₂ in excess of physiologic serum levels may be bound to other fraction including beta globulins ^{84 84}

It is possible that deficiency or absence of the vitamin B₁₂ binding protein in serum could lead to inability to retain vitamin B₁₂ A single case of macrocytic anemia with a defect in vitamin B₁₂ binding has been reported ⁸ This patient's macrocytic anemia could not be maintained in remission by 30 μg of vitamin B₁₂ intramuscularly at one to two week intervals and intramuscular administration of 0.5 μg of Co⁶⁰ labeled vitamin B₁₂ resulted in the urinary excretion of 60 per cent of the admin-

is that folic acid and the chemically well defined folic acid active substances are not ordinarily present in human blood.⁵⁹

Balance studies cannot be used to study the absorption of folic acid because fecal excretion considerably exceeds dietary intake of the vitamin probably due to its synthesis by intestinal bacteria.⁶⁰

In the light of present knowledge no clear separation of the folic acid deficiency states caused by failure to ingest folic acid from those caused by failure to absorb the vitamin is possible. The general heading of Nutritional Folic Acid Deficiency will therefore be used to encompass those states characterized by variable degrees of inadequate intake and inadequate absorption of folic acid. The relative roles of inadequate diet and defective absorption in each condition will be indicated insofar as it is possible but the reader must realize that future knowledge may necessitate revision of the relative significance attributed to these two factors in any given clinical state.

The recent demonstration that folic acid deficiency may be measured easily in man^{44, 45, 46, 47} may prove a stepping stone on the road to solution of many of these problems.

I NUTRITIONAL FOLIC ACID DEFICIENCY

A. Inadequate Diet

The daily dietary requirement of a normal man for folic acid is estimated to be less than one mg.^{56, 57} The excellent hematologic response of some folic acid-deficient patients to parenteral administration of as little as 200 μ g daily⁸⁴ suggests that the daily requirement may be less than 0.25 mg. As stated above more studies with parenteral administration of small doses of folic acid in folic acid deficient patients are needed to delineate more clearly the minimal daily requirement for this vitamin.

The major dietary sources of folic acid are animal liver and kidney and fresh green leafy (and nonleafy) vegetables.⁹ Dried kidney beans, navy beans, and soy beans are also high in folic

5 *Etiologic Classification of the Megaloblastic Anemias Due to Folic Acid Deficiency and Other Causes*

ETIOLOGIC CLASSIFICATION of the folic acid deficiency states has been hampered by a number of problems. The daily dietary requirement for folic acid is unknown.⁸⁶ Because of the efficacy of oral treatment of folic acid deficiency states, no extensive studies have been reported indicating the minimal parenteral maintenance dose for folic acid deficient patients. Therefore, no baseline has been established for studies relating to the possibly different requirement for folic acid of individuals with various forms of folic acid deficiency.

This is especially true of the folic acid deficiency states of pregnancy and infancy, where increased requirement for folic acid almost certainly exists as a result of the increased metabolic load carried by the mother and the growth requirement of the infant.

Because of the simplicity of oral treatment with 5 to 15 mg doses of folic acid in patients with intestinal malabsorption, very little information is available as to whether malabsorption is the cause or the effect of folic acid deficiency in these individuals. It is quite probable, for example, that the folic acid deficiency of many cases of tropical sprue is primarily due to an inadequate diet,¹⁰ and that the folic acid deficiency itself produces intestinal malabsorption, diarrhea, and perpetuation of the deficiency due to the resulting impaired absorption of folic acid.

Determination of baseline blood levels of folic acid is considered valueless by most workers,⁷ the available evidence

is that folic acid and the chemically well defined folic acid active substances are not ordinarily present in human blood.⁴⁹

Balance studies cannot be used to study the absorption of folic acid because fecal excretion considerably exceeds dietary intake of the vitamin probably due to its synthesis by intestinal bacteria.¹⁰

In the light of present knowledge no clear separation of the folic acid deficiency states caused by failure to ingest folic acid from those caused by failure to absorb the vitamin is possible. The general heading of Nutritional Folic Acid Deficiency will therefore be used to encompass those states characterized by variable degrees of inadequate intake and inadequate absorption of folic acid. The relative roles of inadequate diet and defective absorption in each condition will be indicated insofar as it is possible but the reader must realize that future knowledge may necessitate revision of the relative significance attributed to these two factors in any given clinical state.

The recent demonstration that folic acid deficiency may be measured easily in man^{48a 48b 48bb} may prove a stepping stone on the road to solution of many of these problems.

1 NUTRITIONAL FOLIC ACID DEFICIENCY

A. Inadequate Diet

The daily dietary requirement of a normal man for folic acid is estimated to be less than one mg.^{296 91} The excellent hematologic response of some folic acid deficient patients to parenteral administration of as little as 250 μ g daily⁸¹ suggests that the daily requirement may be less than 0.25 mg. As stated above more studies with parenteral administration of small doses of folic acid in folic acid deficient patients are needed to delineate more clearly the minimal daily requirement for this vitamin.

The major dietary sources of folic acid are animal liver and kidney and fresh green leafy (and nonleafy) vegetables.⁹ Dried kidney beans navy beans and soy beans are also high in folic

acid content as are peanuts almonds coconuts and some fresh fruits

It should be noted that from 50 to 95 per cent of the folic acid content of foods may be lost in cooking⁹³ losses may be especially great in canned foods⁹⁴

TABLES 1 AND 2 present the distribution of folic acid in foods⁹⁵ and provide a useful reference when attempting to determine whether the diet of a given patient is deficient in folic acid The values are for *fresh uncooked foods* only

It should be remembered that most diets which are deficient in folic acid are also inadequate in vitamin B₁₂ though to a lesser degree A striking exception to this rule is the folic acid deficiency associated with a milk diet Milk of most kinds is uniquely low in folic acid but contains adequate quantities of vitamin B₁⁹⁷⁻⁹⁶ An additional factor favoring general predominance of folic acid dietary deficiency is a possibly somewhat greater stability of vitamin B₁ and greater retention in foods with cooking

1 Megaloblastic Anemias in Infancy

Because of the low folic acid content of milk infants subsisting entirely on milk may develop megaloblastic anemia⁹⁹⁻³⁰⁰ Concomitant ascorbic acid deficiency can often be expected especially when the infant is fed cow's milk which even when undiluted contains only one quarter as much vitamin C as breast milk³⁰¹ (See section Inadequate Utilization of Folic Acid due to Ascorbic Acid Deficiency page 58)

Evaporated milk⁹⁹ dried milk goat's milk and breast milk⁹⁹⁻³⁰⁰ all may provide inadequate quantities of folic acid The megaloblastic anemia of infants fed goat's milk exclusively has been described as a separate entity but this anemia shows the typical recovery pattern following folic acid therapy³⁰²

Megaloblastic anemia following the ingestion of a diet consisting almost exclusively of milk has been reported in adults who were emotionally disturbed (usually depressed)

FOLIC ACID DEFICIENCY CLASSIFICATION

47

TABLE 1—Folic Acid (PG41teroxylglutamic Acid) Content of Foods

Food	Moisture	Total PCV content fresh basis %/g
Meats and Eggs		0.06-0.11
Beef round steak	0	0.03
Beef heart	1	0.08
Beef kidney	76	0.03
Beef sweetbreads	18	0.03
Beef liver	68	0.03
Lamb stew meat	54	0.06
Lamb liver	69	0.03
Pork loin	66	2.2
Pork liver	68	0.10
Pork ham (smoked)	61	0.03
Chicken dark meat	1	0.03
Chicken white meat	2	3.7
Chicken liver	4	0.03-0.08
Eggs whole	81	0.001
Eggs yolk	30	0.13
Nuts		0.51
Peanuts	1	0.45
Almonds	41	0.91
Coconuts		
Vegetables fresh		0.89-1.17
Asparagus	93	0.10-0.40
Beans lima	0	0.14-0.41
Beans green nap	90	0.10-0.15
Beets	86	0.04-0.33
Broccoli	91	0.20-0.31
Brussels sprout	81	0.11-0.13
Cabbage	72	0.0-0.15
Carrots	88	0.11-0.29
Cauliflower	91	0.03-0.0
Corn sweet	61-81	0.0-0.07
Cucumbers	90	0.31-0.39
Greens leaf	90	0.48-1.15
Greens spinach	72	0.03-0.54
Lettuce	90	0.11-0.35
Leeks fresh	6	0.01-0.09
Pepper green	31	0.04-0.00
Potatoes fresh	80	0.08-0.0
Potatoes fresh	11	0.05-0.10
Pumpkin	91	0.05-0.19
Sweet potato	0	0.02-0.13
Tomatoes	9-91	

From STOKSTAD F. I. R. *Interwglutamic acid VIII Occurrence in foods* In
Schroll W. H. J. and Harr R. S. *The Vitamin* New York Academic Press
1961 vol 3

TABLE 2—Folic Acid (PGA Pteroylglutamic Acid) Content of Foods

Food	Moisture %	Total IGA content fresh basis γ/g
<i>Vegetables dried</i>		
Beans kidney	9	1.90
Beans navy	11	1.28
Beans soybeans	8	2.08
Peas green split	9	0.4
Peas yellow split	—	0.24
<i>Fruits fresh</i>		
Apple whole	84	0.04
Apricots	84	0.30
Bananas	73	0.35
Berries blackberries	84	0.59-1.1
Berries cranberries	85	0.13
Berries strawberries	91	0.60
Cantaloupes	91	0.41-0.88
Cherries	80	0.30
Grapefruit	89	0.24
Grapes	80	0.70-0.79
Lemons	91	0.84
Oranges	86	0.28-0.40
Orange juice	87	0.36
Peaches	88	0.08-0.20
Pears	85	0.11-0.16
<i>Fruits dried</i>		
Apricots	24	0.06
Peaches	25	0.04
Runes	74	0.04
Raisins seedless	14	0.13
<i>Cereals and grains</i>		
Barley	11	0.45
Corn yellow	11	0.26
Oats	11	0.77
Rice brown	5	0.12-0.3
Rice milled	5	0.15
Sorghum grain		
White kafir	11	0.71
Yellow milo	10	0.71
Wheat	8.5-10.7	0.34-0.4
<i>Dairy Products</i>		
Buttermilk	84	0.11
Evaporated	73	0.04
Non fat dry	7	0.02
Cheese Cheddar	34	0.19-0.4
Cheese cottage	3-	0.02

From STORSTAD F. L. R. *The α -glutamic acid VIII Occurrence in food* /
 Sebrell W. H. Jr. and Harr R. S. *The Vitamins* New York Academic Press
 1954 vol 3

and in adults in whom full mouth dental extractions led to substitution of milk for all solid food.⁹

Infants with kwashiorkor or other debilitating conditions occasionally manifest a megaloblastic anemia. In such cases there are so many deficiencies (often including vitamin B₁₂ deficiency) that it is difficult to assign a predominant role in the development of megaloblastosis to any one of them,¹³ although treatment with folic acid usually is required and produces a reticulocytosis.³⁰⁴⁻³⁰ The one four year old boy with kwashiorkor recently seen at The Mount Sinai Hospital had a megaloblastic anemia with a serum vitamin B₁₂ level of 32 µg/ml, a serum folic acid level of 2.7 mµg/ml and a serum iron level of 15 µg/ml. The iron deficiency had a moderate masking effect on the erythrocyte component of the megaloblastic picture due to the B₁₂ and folic acid deficiencies.

Remission of megaloblastic anemia in infancy has occurred following vitamin B₁₂ administration³⁰⁶ perhaps due in the majority of cases to mobilization of residual stores of folic acid. Failure of response to vitamin B₁₂ is frequent,³⁰⁷⁻³⁰ but failures of response to folic acid therapy occasionally supplemented with ascorbic acid are relatively rare. It must be concluded that in most instances megaloblastic anemia in infancy is caused primarily by deficiency of folic acid. However, neurologic damage has been observed frequently enough especially by European workers³⁰⁷⁻³⁰ so that concomitant or even primary vitamin B₁₂ deficiency must always be looked for. The term "megaloblastic anemia of infancy" should be discarded. It implies an etiologic unity which does not exist.

2 Megaloblastic Anemias in Pregnancy and Puerperium

The great majority of cases of megaloblastic anemia in pregnancy has been in women ingesting diets inadequate in folic acid content³⁰⁸ and often wholly inadequate especially in meat content.¹³ This inadequacy is accentuated by the increased requirement for folic acid during pregnancy³⁰⁹ especially during the last two months when the fetal requirement for this

vitamin may be maximal³⁰⁴ and overt folic acid deficiency appears

While most cases of megaloblastic anemia in pregnancy and puerperium appear to result primarily from folic acid deficiency some cases have superimposed vitamin B₁₂ deficiency or suffer from primary deficiency of vitamin B₁₂^{74 5 49,50} Such deficiency may develop from the combination of a marginal diet depressed absorption associated with pregnancy¹ with folic acid deficiency and parasitization of the mother's vitamin B₁₂ by the fetus (See section Parasitization of Vitamin B₁₂ by Fetus page 42)

The term megaloblastic anemia of pregnancy implies an etiologic unity which does not exist and should be discarded. A more accurate designation would be megaloblastic anemia in pregnancy due to folic acid deficiency and/or vitamin B₁₂ deficiency caused by (state specific cause or causes such as poor diet)

Careful search for early signs of megaloblastic anemia in the peripheral blood smears of all women admitted to hospital for delivery might reveal the incidence of megaloblastic anemia in pregnancy to be as high as 1 in every 39 patients in temperate zones^{2 3} or even higher. The incidence in the tropics is still higher.

Some cases have been reported in the presence of a presumably excellent diet and no known gastrointestinal disturbance³¹⁰. However such cases responded to folic acid therapy thus leaving open the question as to etiology.

It is undecided as to whether impaired absorption of folic acid occurs during pregnancy. Girdwood³¹¹ found no evidence for inadequate absorption but more recent work³¹ indicates that absorption of folic acid may be impaired in pregnant women^{304 312}

The onset of megaloblastic anemia in pregnancy usually occurs in the 1st trimester and sometimes in the puerperium^{313 313}. Remission may appear spontaneously when the pregnancy terminates but relapse may occur with a subsequent pregnancy or in the absence of another pregnancy.⁷⁶

In the tropics megaloblastic anemia of pregnancy may respond partially or completely to vitamin B₁₂ alone^{7 312-317} In temperate zones this may occur³¹⁷ but is much less common probably because general dietary deficiency stemming from economic and religious reasons with inadequacies of folic acid vitamin B₁₂ and protein is much more common in tropical countries³¹⁸

Large doses of vitamin B₁₂ often produce hematologic improvement^{319 3 0} This may be due to a mass action effect of such doses with mobilization of residual stores of folic acid Such an effect is suggested by the fact that while vitamin B₁₂ may induce a temporary remission the end result of such therapy is disappointing in many cases if it is not supplemented with folic acid^{3 1} In some cases of course primary vitamin B₁₂ deficiency may exist

3 Nutritional Megaloblastic Anemia (Tropical and Nontropical Macrocytic Anemia)

Gross dietary deficiency resulting from poverty ignorance or religious tenets is widespread throughout the world and especially in tropical areas Such deficiency often encompasses a lack of animal protein and of fresh green vegetables^{6 3} It therefore results in variable degrees of folic acid and vitamin B₁₂ deficiency in addition to deficiency of iron and sometimes of protein as well⁷

Many patients with nutritional megaloblastic anemia respond partially or completely to vitamin B₁₂^{11 314 316 3 2 3 4} Slow and suboptimal responses are frequent even with large doses of vitamin B₁₂

On the other hand a uniformly excellent response follows folic acid administration^{8 11 3 3 3}

Subnormal serum vitamin B₁₂ levels have been reported in some cases of nutritional megaloblastic anemia^{10 3 2 3.0} but even in such cases folic acid was usually required in addition to vitamin B₁₂ in order to obtain complete response to treatment

Therefore the megaloblastic anemia resulting from inade-

vitamin may be maximal³⁰⁴ and overt folic acid deficiency appears

While most cases of megaloblastic anemia in pregnancy and puerperium appear to result primarily from folic acid deficiency some cases have superimposed vitamin B₁₂ deficiency or suffer from primary deficiency of vitamin B₁₂.^{4, 7, 489b} Such deficiency may develop from the combination of a marginal diet, depressed absorption associated with pregnancy,⁴ with folic acid deficiency and parasitization of the mother's vitamin B₁₂ by the fetus (See section "Parasitization of Vitamin B₁₂ by Fetus" page 12.)

The term "megaloblastic anemia of pregnancy" implies an etiologic unity which does not exist and should be discarded. A more accurate designation would be "megaloblastic anemia in pregnancy due to folic acid deficiency and/or vitamin B₁₂ deficiency caused by _____ (state specific cause or causes such as poor diet)"

Careful search for early signs of megaloblastic anemia in the peripheral blood smears of all women admitted to hospital for delivery might reveal the incidence of megaloblastic anemia in pregnancy to be as high as 1 in every 30 patients in temperate zones,⁷³ or even higher. The incidence in the tropics is still higher.

Some cases have been reported in the presence of a presumably excellent diet and no known gastrointestinal disturbance.³¹⁰ However, such cases responded to folic acid therapy, thus leaving open the question as to etiology.

It is undecided as to whether impaired absorption of folic acid occurs during pregnancy. Cirdwood³¹¹ found no evidence for inadequate absorption, but more recent work³¹ indicates that absorption of folic acid may be impaired in pregnant women.^{304, 312}

The onset of megaloblastic anemia in pregnancy usually occurs in the last trimester and sometimes in the puerperium.^{313, 317} Remission may appear spontaneously when the pregnancy terminates, but relapse may occur with a subsequent pregnancy or in the absence of another pregnancy.⁷⁰

usually reveals a definite shift to the right as expected in early megaloblastic anemia

B Defective Absorption

As was stated in the discussion of the vitamin B₁₂ deficiency states associated with small intestinal disorders (*vide supra*) variable degrees of reduced absorption of folic acid and of vitamin B₁₂ may occur with any structural or functional disorder of the small intestine. If the disorder is chronic clinically overt deficiency may eventually occur. Similar deficiency may occur in the presence of an abnormal intestinal flora usually resulting from stagnation of intestinal contents (the blind loop syndrome). It is possible to infer that folic acid is absorbed primarily from the jejunum. Patients who have had large amounts of ileum resected may retain normal serum folic acid levels even a decade after the resection.^{48,49} Patients with idiopathic steatorrhea have lost much of their jejunal absorptive surface but still may have normal ileal mucosa.^{3, 9} Such patients invariably have low serum folic acid levels and the levels may not rise to normal even after prolonged therapy with steroids or gluten free diets.^{48(b), 1}

1 Malabsorption Syndrome

a Primary

(1) *Tropical sprue* Nearly all cases of tropical sprue appear to be closely related to deficiency of folic acid. Treatment with folic acid not only converts the hematologic picture to normal but also brings about subsidence of the anorexia, diarrhea, steatorrhea and other clinical signs and symptoms of tropical sprue.^{331, 32}

It is probable that the malabsorption syndrome of tropical sprue with its accompanying defective absorption of folic acid^{31, 336} is the end result of dietary deficiency of folic acid and should be classed as a *pseudo primary* malabsorption syndrome resulting from dietary deficiency of folic acid. Such die

quate diets may be considered in almost all cases to be primarily a consequence of folic acid deficiency. In the production of these megaloblastic anemias it is not yet determined whether the major role is played by a relatively greater deficiency of folic acid than of vitamin B₁₂ in the diet or relatively greater body stores and slower utilization of vitamin B₁₂. The author favors the latter possibility in the New York area because most of the patients with nutritional megaloblastic anemia of which he has personal knowledge were on diets grossly inadequate in both vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid and yet they had normal serum vitamin B₁₂ levels despite low serum folic acid levels.

4 Cirrhosis Associated with Chronic Alcoholism

Megaloblastic bone marrow pictures were observed in 4 of a group of 16 patients with macrocytic anemia associated with hepatic cirrhosis and chronic alcoholism.⁸⁴ In the patients with megaloblastic anemia demonstrable histologically folic acid deficiency was proved by observation of subnormal daily urinary excretion of folic acid, failure to excrete administered folic acid promptly, and striking clinical and hematologic response to oral administration of 1350 μ g of conjugated folic acid plus 150 μ g of free folic acid daily.

The evidence suggested that folic acid deficiency developed in these patients through a combination of marginal or inadequate dietary intake plus a possible increased requirement for folic acid. While no evidence of folic acid deficiency was found in the 12 patients with macrocytic anemia *without* megaloblastic marrows, the possibility of incipient folic acid deficiency in those cases was not completely ruled out.

Further exploration of the etiology of the macrocytic anemias so often associated with hepatic disease is needed.¹³ Our own experience with patients with cirrhosis and macrocytic anemia would suggest that folic acid deficiency is usually present manifested by low serum folic acid levels regardless of whether the bone marrow morphology is clearly megaloblastic or appears to be normoblastic. In these latter patients an Arneeth count

usually reveals a definite shift to the right as expected in early megaloblastic anemia

B Defective Absorption

As was stated in the discussion of the vitamin B₁₂ deficiency states associated with small intestinal disorders (*vide supra*) variable degrees of reduced absorption of folic acid and of vitamin B₁₂ may occur with any structural or functional disorder of the small intestine. If the disorder is chronic clinically overt deficiency may eventually occur. Similar deficiency may occur in the presence of an abnormal intestinal flora usually resulting from stagnation of intestinal contents (the blind loop syndrome). It is possible to infer that folic acid is absorbed primarily from the jejunum. Patients who have had large amounts of ileum resected may retain normal serum folic acid levels even a decade after the resection.^{489b} Patients with idiopathic steatorrhea have lost much of their jejunal absorptive surface but still may have normal ileal mucosa.³³⁰ Such patients invariably have low serum folic acid levels and the levels may not rise to normal even after prolonged therapy with steroids or gluten free diets.^{489f, 12}

1 Malabsorption Syndrome

a Primary

(1) *Tropical sprue* Nearly all cases of tropical sprue appear to be closely related to deficiency of folic acid. Treatment with folic acid not only converts the hematologic picture to normal but also brings about subsidence of the anorexia, diarrhea, steatorrhea, and other clinical signs and symptoms of tropical sprue.^{331, 335}

It is probable that the malabsorption syndrome of tropical sprue with its accompanying defective absorption of folic acid^{31, 336} is the end result of dietary deficiency of folic acid and should be classed as a *pseudo primary* malabsorption syndrome resulting from dietary deficiency of folic acid. Such die

tary deficiency has been observed to be a significant factor in the pathogenesis of the disorder¹⁰⁻¹²

Clear delineation of the pathogenesis has been confused by the demonstration of impaired absorption of folic acid in tropical sprue³¹⁻³⁶ and of return to normal folic acid absorption following the administration of a course of antibiotics³¹. The latter observation suggests the possibility that changes in the bacterial flora of the intestine perhaps related to diet³⁷ may be intimately involved in the development of the folic acid deficiency state.

Delineation of the etiology of tropical sprue has been further confused by including in this category individuals with non-tropical sprue who happened to be in the tropics.¹⁸ Unlike in nontropical sprue the associated atrophy of the intestinal villi in tropical sprue often disappears on treatment³³ and complete recovery of the patient is very frequent.^{10-12, 33, 34}

(2) *Childhood and adult coeliac disease (idiopathic steatorrhea nontropical sprue)* Unlike tropical sprue the existence of which is a clear cut condition independent of dietary folic acid deficiency is in doubt the existence of childhood and adult coeliac disease as a single etiologic entity is becoming firmly established.³⁴⁻³⁶ Its existence as a hereditary constitutional defect in metabolism associated with irreversible atrophy of the small intestinal villi has been discussed in connection with the development in this condition of a secondary absorptive defect for vitamin B₁₂.

It is probable that the metabolic defect is enzymatic and associated with folic acid metabolism³⁴ but it is undetermined whether the primary defect is in the transport of folic acid or its conjugates across the intestinal barrier or in their utilization after absorption. Poor transport across the intestinal mucosa is suggested by the low fasting serum folic acid levels of patients with idiopathic steatorrhea before and after years of treatment with steroids or a gluten free diet.

In this connection determination of the fasting serum folic acid level in the relatives of patients with idiopathic steatorrhea

may prove fruitful. Such a study might uncover a number of persons with latent disease manifested only by a serum folic acid level slightly below normal and thereby provide information of value in further delineating the genetic pattern of idiopathic steatorrhea.

The anemia of childhood coeliac disease is usually microcytic and hypochromic while that in the adult expression of the disorder is macrocytic.^{28, 337, 338} A rare case of macrocytic anemia may be found in childhood coeliac disease.³³⁹

The megaloblastic anemia which occurs in the adult form of coeliac disease generally responds to folic acid administration³⁴⁰ and incompletely or not at all to vitamin B₁₂.^{341, 342} Unlike in tropical sprue, however, in nontropical sprue treatment with folic acid is not usually associated with a general improvement of symptoms and signs other than those due to the megaloblastic anemia, and not infrequently some anemia and macrocytosis may persist.³⁴⁴⁻³⁴⁸ When this occurs, associated vitamin B₁₂ deficiency may be found.

b. Secondary

Folic acid deficiency is rare in those conditions producing a secondary malabsorption syndrome without the growth of an abnormal intestinal bacterial flora (such as may accompany intestinal strictures and anastomoses). The latter conditions will be discussed below.

C. Competition for Folic Acid by Intestinal Bacteria The Blind Loop Syndrome

As stated in the discussion of this syndrome under the heading of the vitamin B₁₂ deficiency states, the major deficiency in any given case of blind loop syndrome may be of either folic acid or vitamin B₁₂.

Cases have been described in which the associated megaloblastic anemia failed to respond to vitamin B₁₂ but was adequately treated with folic acid.⁶ The reverse situation has also been documented.³²

It may be that the type of deficiency which predominates will depend on the relative requirement and avidity for folic acid and vitamin B₁₂ of the abnormal bacterial intestinal flora as associated with the particular case of blind loop syndrome

II INADEQUATE UTILIZATION OF FOLIC ACID

A Inability to Utilize

1 Due to Administration of Folic Acid Antagonists

Agents such as 4 aminopteroyl glutamic acid (Aminopterin) by blocking the utilization of folic acid can produce a megaloblastic anemia^{310 314}

This anemia is not reversible by folic acid administration since 4 amino analogs of folic acid not only compete with folic acid but also block the conversion of folic acid to folinic acid³¹⁰. It may be reversed by administration of citrovorum factor (folinic acid) which bypasses the block^{310 311}

2 Due to Administration of Anticonvulsants or Pyrimethamine

The appearance of megaloblastic anemia in patients being treated for prolonged periods of time with anticonvulsant drugs has been reported with increasing frequency^{35 33}. Drugs involved include Dilantin (Phenytoin)(diphenylhydantoin sodium)^{354 357} Primidone (Mysoline)(5 phenyl 5 ethyl hexahydropyrimidine 4,6 dione)^{38 360} Rulonol (methophenobarbital)³⁶¹ and occasionally other barbiturates including Amytal (amyl barbitone) and Seconal (quinalbarbitone)^{33 36}. Megaloblastic anemia has not yet been reported following the use of phenobarbital probably because of the low dose of this agent usually administered⁶¹

The megaloblastic anemia which occurs responds either to withdrawal of the anticonvulsant³⁶³ or to administration of folic acid^{34 39} and weakly or not at all to vitamin B₁₂ except in very large doses^{3 33 304}

The absorption and tissue stores of folic acid in these patients appear to be normal in some but in others the clearance of intravenously injected folic acid was abnormally rapid^{304 365} sug

gesting a possible deficiency in tissue stores of the vitamin. Other interpretations of this finding are possible and it is believed at present that the anticonvulsants must in some manner interfere in the utilization of folic acid. It is possible they act in part by competing with folic acid for intestinal absorption.

The chemical structure of the anticonvulsants resembles the pteridine ring system of folic acid with the pyrazine ring open and partly degraded. They also resemble therefore the pyrimidines involved in nucleoprotein synthesis and it is possible they may interfere with pyrimidine utilization as well as folic acid utilization and may produce a megaloblastic anemia in part by blocking pyrimidine incorporation into nucleoproteins.

The same may be true of pyrimethamine (Daraprim), a substituted pyrimidine (2,4-diamino-5-p-chlorophenyl-6-ethylpyrimidine)³⁶⁸ used as an antimalarial drug. In large doses this agent can produce a megaloblastic anemia which rapidly clears when the drug is withdrawn.^{367, 368} The antimicrobial action of pyrimethamine for *Streptococcus faecalis* is blocked by either large amounts of folic acid or small amounts of folinic acid³⁶⁹ and its toxic effect on the growing rat is alleviated by folinic acid but not by folic acid.^{2, 9} Thus while structurally pyrimethamine is more closely related to thymine than to folic acid, existing evidence suggests it is more an antifolic acid than an antithymine.³⁷¹

Serum vitamin B₁₂ levels have usually been reported to be normal in cases of megaloblastic anemia due to anticonvulsant therapy³⁵³ but low levels were found in 2 cases.^{2, 3, 2, 2} In one of these cases the low serum level of vitamin B₁₂ was observed during folic acid therapy.^{2, 3} Generally vitamin B₁₂ deficiency is probably not a phenomenon of significance in the megaloblastic anemias resulting from anticonvulsant therapy.

A 68 year old man who had been taking Dilantin for 15 years was seen at the Mount Sinai Hospital with a megaloblastic anemia. His serum folic acid level was normal but his serum vitamin B₁₂ level was 32 μg /ml (E. Gracilis assay). In vitro assay of his gastric juice revealed no intrinsic factor and Glass and Schilling testing revealed inability to absorb vitamin B₁₂ cor

rectible with orally administered intrinsic factor concentrate. The patient was thus revealed as a person with pernicious anemia. The Dilantin was a red herring in his case revealing the necessity of careful work up for other possibilities even when a seemingly obvious explanation for megaloblastic anemia presented itself.

3 Due to Ascorbic Acid Deficiency

There is evidence that ascorbic acid is involved in augmenting the conversion of folic acid to a metabolically more active form.³⁷³⁻³⁷⁴ A few cases of megaloblastic anemia appearing in patients with scurvy and cleared by treatment with ascorbic acid have been reported.³⁷⁻³⁷⁷

However, the anemia associated with scurvy is usually normocytic,³⁷⁸ and even in severe scurvy anemia may not occur at all.^{3-36,38,39} For these reasons, plus the fact that it has not been possible to produce anemia in man by experimental ascorbic acid deprivation,³⁸⁰⁻³⁸¹ it is probable that megaloblastic anemia appears in ascorbic acid deficiency states only in the presence of an associated deficiency in the supply or metabolism of folic acid.³⁷

Dietary deficiency of both ascorbic and folic acids has been implicated in the causation of the megaloblastic anemias of infancy.^{38-99,38-387} (See section, Megaloblastic Anemias in Infancy, page 46.)

B Parasitization

1 By Fetus

It was pointed out in the discussion of megaloblastic anemia in pregnancy that the majority of patients were ingesting a diet inadequate in folic acid content. The folic acid requirement of the rapidly growing fetus probably results in removal of a significant portion of the marginal amount of folic acid absorbed.³⁸⁹ and overt folic acid deficiency with megaloblastic anemia is the result. The serum folic acid levels of newborns are almost in

variably much higher than the levels in their mother's serum.^{69a}

The low serum folic acid levels of women in the latter half of pregnancy after an oral dose of folic acid have been interpreted as due to impaired absorption of the vitamin.³¹ An alternative explanation may be rapid uptake by the fetus with the result that measurable serum levels in the mother are low.

2 By Malignant Tissue? (See Chapter 5 Other Causes)

A megaloblastic bone marrow picture has been observed in association with various malignant diseases.³⁸⁴⁻³⁸⁷ It may be particularly prominent in erythremic myelosis (DiGuglielmo's disease)³⁸⁸⁻³⁹⁰ and erythroleukemia (the DiGuglielmo syndrome)²⁻³⁸⁸⁻³⁹⁰ and in acute leukemia usually of the aleukemic type presenting as a refractory macrocytic anemia.⁴¹⁻²⁻⁹⁻³⁵⁴⁻³⁹¹⁻³⁹² It is also not uncommon in polycythemia vera.³⁹⁷

An explanation for the megaloblastic marrow picture associated with widespread malignant disease was speculatively derived from the observations that in such disease there is a markedly reduced output of a test dose of folic acid³⁵¹ and rapid clearance of an intravenous dose of this vitamin.³⁹⁴ It was suggested that the reduced output in the urine was a result of utilization of folic acid at a rapid rate by rapidly growing neoplastic tissue. Such utilization could produce depletion of the body stores of folic acid or perhaps just local depletion at the bone marrow level especially if the diet contained only a marginal quantity of the vitamin and megaloblastic anemia would then appear. Serum folic acid is sometimes low with widespread malignant disease.^{486b}

It is also possible that the marrow cells may be unable to capture or utilize folic acid or vitamin B₁₂ adequately in the presence of some malignancies.³⁹⁶

III ACHRESTIC ANEMIA

(IDIOPATHIC REFRACTORY MEGALOBLASTIC ANEMIA)

Achrestic anemia and idiopathic refractory megaloblastic anemia are terms coined to classify those cases of megaloblastic

anemia which did not seem to fit into any other category or to respond to liver therapy^{398 399}

In some of these cases megaloblastosis disappears when folic acid therapy is administered leaving a hyperplastic bone marrow and a refractory normoblastic anemia. The megaloblastosis appeared to be a consequence of excessive utilization of folic acid by the hyperplastic bone marrow.⁴⁰⁰

The majority of these cases have responded to folic acid or liver extract and it is probable that with the currently available clinical and laboratory procedures most of these cases insofar as megaloblastic picture is concerned will be classified among the folic acid deficiency states.³⁹ A few may be among the vitamin B₁₂ deficiency conditions and the very few which do not respond to either vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid^{401 401 401b 415} may be due to other possible causes of interference with nucleoprotein synthesis such as those discussed in the next section.

OTHER CAUSES

In CHAPTER 3 The Biochemical Basis of Megaloblastic Hematopoiesis it was pointed out that the megaloblast is the product of interference with nucleoprotein metabolism. This interference may be caused either by direct inhibition or by depletion of the enzyme systems and building blocks necessary for nucleoprotein synthesis.

Although depletion of vitamin B₁₂ or of folic acid is the cause of the overwhelming majority of megaloblastic anemias such depletion has not as yet been generally considered to be present in some conditions which are occasionally accompanied by megaloblastic bone marrow pictures.

These conditions may be broadly characterized as associated with inhibition or depletion of the bone marrow.² They include agranulocytosis^{40 403} myelofibrosis⁴⁰⁴ tuberculosis^{405 40} leishmaniasis⁴⁰⁶ sepsis⁴⁰⁷ hemochromatosis^{408 409} radiation injury⁴⁰⁷ and various severe anemias especially when associated with hemolysis^{410-41 413}

Future study may relate many of the megaloblastic cell

pictures associated with depletion of the bone marrow to deficiency of folic acid or vitamin B₁₂ in some cases with such deficiency only manifest at the bone marrow level caused by inadequate or rapid utilization of these vitamins. Excessively rapid clearance of an intravenously administered dose of folic acid has been demonstrated in 5 cases of chronic myelofibrosis 1 of which had megaloblastic erythropoiesis which became normoblastic after oral folic acid therapy.³⁰⁴ Rapid clearance of intravenously administered folic acid also occurs in hemolytic anemia.²⁰⁴ Even in the absence of an overtly megaloblastic bone marrow in hemolytic anemia folic acid in pharmacologic doses may produce a reticulocytosis.⁴¹³

The logical belief that megaloblastic anemia in association with various hemolytic anemias may be the result of an increased utilization of folic acid in the presence of accelerated hemato-poiesis is becoming increasingly popular.⁴¹³

Megaloblastic anemia associated with hemochromatosis has been demonstrated to respond to vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid administration.^{408, 414} There is evidence that some cases may result from a primary deficiency of vitamin B₁₂.^{41, 415} but in only 1 case so far has this relationship been convincingly reported.

Direct interference with nucleoprotein synthesis may play a role in some cases of megaloblastic anemia associated with what appears to be inhibition of the bone marrow such as agranulocytosis. Here too however the possibility of folic acid deficiency must not be overlooked.

Aplastic anemia is frequently associated with macrocytosis sometimes partly explainable by reticulocytosis since reticulocytes are large red cells.⁴¹⁷ Some cases of aplastic anemia and of regenerative anemia limited to the red cell series may be due to total bone marrow exhaustion as the end result of prolonged deprivation of vitamin B₁₂ (or folic acid) which may have passed through a megaloblastic stage before eventuating in a hypocellular nonmegaloblastic bone marrow.^{418, 418a} Such a marrow may be capable of only a slow response if any to long term administration of vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid. Widespread aplasia

of the bone marrow as a terminal event was a common finding at autopsy of patients with pernicious anemia in the years prior to the discovery of liver therapy ⁴¹⁹

A rare patient with megaloblastic anemia may have an esoteric defect along the synthetic pathway leading to nucleoprotein formation. One such patient was an infant with a refractory megaloblastic anemia associated with orotic acid excretion ^{401b}. The anemia responded only to steroids and a concentrated yeast extract containing a mixture of uridylic and cytidylic acids. The infant was believed to be unable to synthesize pyrimidine nucleotides adequately due to a block at the stage of conversion of orotic acid to orotidylic acid. It is unknown whether the infant might have been able to effect this conversion with the aid of folic acid or of one of the B₁₂ coenzymes which have been suggested ⁴¹¹ possibly to be the main forms in which vitamin B₁₂ is catalytically active in the enzymatic reactions of living cells. It has been suggested that conditions may exist in which because of a block in the conversion of vitamin to coenzyme only the latter may have therapeutic value ⁴¹⁹

The subject of possible enzymatic defects in nucleoprotein synthesis in man related or unrelated to defects in conversion of folic acid, folinic acid or vitamin B₁₂ to catalytically active forms is just beginning to be explored. Careful study of all patients with refractory megaloblastic anemia with the aid of a biochemical orientation will undoubtedly uncover many exotic defects in the future.

The megaloblastic anemia picture sometimes seen in association with various widespread malignant diseases has been discussed in the section Parasitization of Folic Acid by Malignant Tissue. Future studies may well require reclassification of some or all of the megaloblastic anemias and megaloblastic bone marrow pictures associated with malignant disease into entirely different etiologic categories. At present knowledge is too limited to permit definitive classification.

6 Clinical Picture

A CENTURY AGO Addison described the clinical picture in pernicious anemia²⁸ This description which we now know may fit equally well an advanced case of any of the vitamin B₁₂ deficiency states and in most respects fits the folic acid deficiency states as well has not been improved upon Addison wrote in 1850

The countenance gets pale the whites of the eyes become pearly the general frame flabby rather than wasted the pulse perhaps large but remarkably slow and compressible and occasionally with a slight jerky especially under the slightest excitement There is an increasing indigestion together with an uncomfortable feeling of lumbar or breathlessness on attempting it the heart is readily made to palpitate the whole surface presents a bluish smooth and wax appearance the lips gums and tongue seem bloodless the flabbiness of the solids increases the appetite fails extreme lassitude and faintness supervene breathlessness and palpitation being produced by the most trifling exertion or emotion some light edema is probably perceived about the ankles The debility becomes extreme the patient can no longer arise from his bed the mind can scarcely wake he falls into a prostrate and half torpid state and at length expires he still lives to the very last only after a sickness of perhaps 1 or 2 days the bulkiness of the general frame a little of which is present notwithstanding the failure and exhaustion of vitality in every other respect

The only parts of Addison's classic description which do not always fit the folic acid deficiency states is generally is those due to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency have been utilized While nervous instability may occur in folic acid deficiency cerebral or other neurologic manifestations as a direct result of the deficiency have only been documented with lack of vitamin B₁₂³¹ The neurologic signs and symptoms which may be seen frequently in the malabsorption syndrome are probably not due to the folic acid deficiency but rather to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency⁴⁰ Subnormal serum vitamin B₁₂ levels (usually below 50 µg/ml) were observed in every case of malabsorption syndrome with neurologic signs or symptoms seen by the author

The other feature of Addison's description which is peculiar to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency is persistence of bulkiness of the frame and obesity In the folic acid deficiency states perhaps because

they are so often accompanied by many other deficiencies emaciation is more usual ^{4 1}

It is generally believed that nervous system involvement only occurs with vitamin B₁₂ deficiency and not with folic acid deficiency alone ^{33 40 4} It has been suggested that this may be due to a requirement of the nervous system for vitamin B₁₂ but not for folic acid ^{4 2} Intensive protein synthesis is required to maintain the integrity of axons ^{4 4 4 6} Protein synthesis is dependent on adequate production of RNA ^{4 7} which in turn is influenced considerably by vitamin B₁₂ ^{4 4 6 4 8 4 9} and perhaps slightly less by folic acid ⁴³⁰

Folic acid appears to be involved intimately in DNA synthesis ^{430 431} and only indirectly in protein synthesis These findings plus recent evidence suggesting the possibility that vitamin B₁₂ may be involved in the enzymatic incorporation of amino acids into proteins ^{4 43 423} may help explain why nervous system damage occurs only in the presence of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency and not in the presence of folic acid deficiency alone However it should be noted that the direct involvement of vitamin B₁₂ in protein synthesis has been questioned ^{434 43} and the mechanism whereby only vitamin B₁₂ but not folic acid deficiency leads to nervous system damage remains a subject for much more study

Another subject for future study is the possibility that vitamin B₁₂ deficiency may result in inadequate synthesis of the lipid moiety of the lipoproteins which are normally present in high concentrations in erythrocyte envelopes and the myelin sheaths in both the central and peripheral nervous system ^{4 4 6} Inadequate maintenance of the myelin sheaths due to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency but not folic acid deficiency is an attractive possible explanation for the neurologic damage associated with the former condition but not the latter

The classic association of subacute combined degeneration (combined system disease posterolateral sclerosis funicular degeneration) with vitamin B₁₂ deficiency is well known ^{437 438} It should be noted however that the disease usually starts insidiously and not subacutely combined lesions are often absent

and lesions of the peripheral nerves occur much more frequently and much earlier than lesions of the central nervous system.^{40 439 441}

The use of the term *subacute combined degeneration* to include all of those changes in the nervous system which may occur as a result of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency should probably be discontinued.^{40 44} The nervous system changes would be more accurately described by direct reference to the actual involvement (i.e. peripheral nerve spinal cord or cerebral damage due to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency^{32 44}) or in general terms *vitamin B₁₂ neuropathy*.⁴⁰

Paresthesia especially numbness and tingling in the hands and feet is the most frequent neurologic symptom of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency.^{23 439 443} Not uncommonly other signs are present: diminution of vibration and position sense unsteadiness poor muscular coordination with ataxia moodiness mental slowness poor memory confusion agitation and depression delusions hallucinations psychosis (usually with paranoid ideation) and central scotomata sometimes with dim vision due to optic atrophy or tobacco amblyopia.^{53 23 439 444 445 446} The wide variety of sensory and motor changes tend to be symmetric especially if maintained for a period of weeks or months.⁴⁴⁷ This is not invariably so however.

In the author's experience loss of position sense in the index toes and loss of vibration sense as tested by a 256 vibrations per second tuning fork usually precedes by many months any evidence of loss of position sense in the great toes or of vibration sense with a 128 vibrations per second tuning fork. Recently a patient with Addisonian pernicious anemia in relapse was seen who had just been given a clean bill of health by an excellent neurologist. Examination with a 256 tuning fork revealed complete loss of vibration sense from toes to iliac crests bilaterally although the neurologist's finding of no loss of vibration sense (using a 128 tuning fork) was confirmed. Also while the neurologist's finding of no loss of position sense (in the great toes) was confirmed position sense was absent in both

index toes. The author has not been able to find in the literature the incidence of loss of 256 vibration sense and index toe position sense in a random sampling of the population and so cannot state with certainty that these findings by themselves are of great significance. They do seem to have a definite relation to early vitamin B₁₂ deficiency disease and when present with such deficiency usually disappear after treatment with vitamin B₁₂.

It is extremely important to realize that nervous system involvement may occur in the absence of overt anemia. Such involvement may be present for years and irreversible damage may occur if the proper diagnosis is made too late.^{33 444 449}

In the author's experience with cases of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency disease with neurologic involvement in the absence of overt anemia (and of folic acid administration) careful examination of the peripheral blood always revealed the presence of an increase over the normal number of neutrophilic polymorphonuclear leukocytes with hypersegmented nuclei and also some macrocytosis (see CHAPTER 3). Examination of the bone marrow revealed changes suggesting early megaloblastic hematopoiesis: large erythrocyte precursors with less than the usual amount of clumping of the nuclear chromatin especially in the early stages of development (i.e. intermediate megaloblasts) and large but perhaps not quite giant metamyelocytes.

Information as to the existence of similar hematologic clues in the reported cases of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency with nervous system involvement and no overt anemia is sparse. It is quite possible that similar findings were present but not commented upon as was the case in one report.⁴⁴⁹

The importance of these hematologic clues is best illustrated by case reports.

1. McL., a 63 year old white male of Irish parentage, was first seen at the Montefiore Hospital in May, 1958, when he was admitted to the emergency service for evaluation of a recent progression of Parkinson's disease which had been only slowly progressive during the past five years. He lived alone, ate a poor diet, drank a quart of beer daily, and had at one time been an alcoholic. For three years he

had manifested steadily progressive mental confusion and forgetfulness. On several occasions he had wandered out into the street and not known where he was. At times he had gone to work on holidays when his place of work was closed. His judgment was noted by relatives to be progressively poorer.

On admission he was obese and plethoric and mildly confused and disoriented. Slight hepatomegaly was noted. Routine examination of the peripheral blood revealed a hematocrit of 41.5 per cent, hemoglobin 13.8 Gm, red cell count (obtained after examination of the peripheral blood smear suggested the proper diagnosis) 3.1 million, white cell count 4,000 with 58 per cent neutrophilic polymorphonuclear leukocytes, 21 per cent lymphocytes, 8 per cent monocytes and 10 per cent eosinophils. Marked macrocytosis and a slight increase in the number of neutrophilic polymorphonuclear leukocytes with hypersegmented nuclei were noted.

Because of the peripheral blood findings a sternal bone marrow aspirate was obtained. Some large but no giant metamyelocytes were seen, some of the erythroid precursors were large with nuclear chromatin more finely divided than that normally seen. Not one of the 10 hematologists to whom the specimen was submitted for examination believed that the marrow could be classified as megaloblastic. Indeed one hematologist of wide experience who examined the specimens after being asked to look at them for evidences of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency stated: "There is a mild erythroid hyperplasia without maturation arrest; this specimen is not consistent with vitamin B₁₂ deficiency."

Nonetheless serum was obtained for assay of vitamin B₁₂ content and a urinary excretion test of a modified Schilling type was started (4, 5). Prior to and shortly after the start of this test the patient dressed and attempted to leave the hospital without notifying anyone. On the first occasion he was brought back to his ward by a police officer who found him wandering aimlessly on the street. The patient claimed he left because there were thirty people after him. A psychiatrist called in consultation made the diagnosis of an organic psychosis associated with cerebral arteriosclerosis.

Because of the necessity for constant supervision and despite the fact that a definite lessening of his confusion was noticeable within 10 days after the first 1 mg. injection of vitamin B₁₂ given in the course of the urinary vitamin B excretion test, it was considered necessary that he be transferred to a mental institution. Transfer was arranged to the closed psychiatric ward of the Bronx Municipal Hospital Center.

At this time the study results were obtained. The serum B₁₂ level was 96 µg/ml by Euglena gracilis assay (4). This low result was coupled with the result of the urinary excretion test and the diagnosis of pernicious anemia was made. (The urinary excretion test demonstrated that the patient lacked intrinsic factor since he excreted only 0.6 per cent of the orally administered dose of labeled vitamin B₁₂ when it was given alone but 10.2 per cent of the dose when it was given with a standard amount of hog intrinsic factor concentrate.)

These results were communicated to the staff of the closed psychiatric ward where the patient resided and treatment was instituted with 1 mg. of vitamin B₁₂ daily. After three weeks of such treatment his psychiatric status had

improved to the point that it was feasible to discharge him with the diagnosis of incipient Addisonian pernicious anemia with cerebral vitamin B₁₂ deficiency improved by treatment.

Had the significance of the macroovalocytes and hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes in the peripheral blood of this patient been overlooked he would have probably spent the rest of his life in a mental institution as just another case of senile psychosis.

Part of this patient's mental disturbance may have been related to factors other than vitamin B₁₂ deficiency since he had been a chronic alcoholic and since the possibility of some cerebral arteriosclerosis did exist. It is always difficult to be certain that a psychosis or other neurologic system damage derived purely from vitamin B₁₂ deficiency. The major criterion is response to vitamin B₁₂ therapy. Unless such response is complete it may be impossible to determine how much of the failure to return to complete normality is due to irreversible damage related to the length of time the patient was deficient in vitamin B₁₂ and how much is due to other causes. This problem frequently arises in the many patients with both pernicious anemia and diabetes mellitus either of which is capable of producing severe peripheral neuropathy.

Another case in which vitamin B₁₂ deficiency appeared almost certainly to be the only agent involved in the psychosis now follows.

The patient was a 39-year-old man who was seen by a psychiatrist in March 1951 because of slight ataxia and paranoid ideation. Diminished position and vibration sense in the lower extremities were noted but not further evaluated in terms of possible vitamin B₁₂ deficiency. The patient became increasingly paranoid and in September 1951 was admitted to a private sanatorium for treatment of paranoid schizophrenia which was clearly evident even to the casual observer. One day in December 1951 after he had received 14 electroshock treatments with mild benefit it was noted that he was pale. Hematologic workup revealed a megaloblastic anemia with a hemoglobin of 5.8 Gm/100 ml of blood. He was started on treatment with vitamin B₁₂ and transferred to the Bronx Municipal Hospital Center from which institution he was discharged in seven weeks no longer psychotic and came with a good remission of all manifestations of pernicious anemia to return to his wife and children.

Had he not been lucky enough to develop an anemia severe enough to be recognized with the unaided eye this man might have gone on to develop irreversible cerebral damage as well as severe combined system disease.

These cases and many others seen by the author and many prior workers emphasize the importance of screening psychotic patients for vitamin B₁₂ deficiency by careful examination of the peripheral blood smear, determination of the serum vitamin B₁₂ level or both.³³⁻⁴¹⁶ Such a screening procedure carried out at large mental institutions might prove of sufficient value to pay for itself many times over in saved patient days. Similar screening might prove fruitful in patients whose mental changes are not serious enough to require hospitalization but in whom senility is considered to explain adequately their behavior.

Another case demonstrating the importance of careful examination of the peripheral blood smear as a routine procedure while perhaps not as dramatic as the first case now follows.

Case 1. A 45-year-old lady was admitted to the semiprivate service of the Montefiore Hospital in April 1959 for evaluation because of an attack of syncope. Similar episodes of syncope had occurred intermittently for the three years prior to admission and there had been a single syncopal episode 20 years previously.

Routine hematologic workup revealed a hematocrit of 33.5 per cent, hemoglobin 10.1 Gm., red count 3.35 million and white count 4,400 with 60 per cent neutrophilic polymorphonuclear leukocytes, 32 per cent lymphocytes, 4 per cent eosinophils and 4 per cent monocytes. Marked anisocytosis as noted with tract ovalocytes and a slight increase in the number of neutrophilic polymorphonuclear leukocytes with hypersegmented nuclei. An occasional Howell-Jolly body was seen.

Because of these findings a sternal bone marrow aspirate was obtained. This showed atypical, somewhat overly large neutrophils and some lagging of maturation of the nucleus in some of the red cell precursors, also a moderate eosinophilia.

Unfortunately vitamin B₁₂ administration was begun immediately on notification of the suspected diagnosis and serum was not obtained for vitamin B₁₂ assay. However urinary excretion testing revealed that only 11.3 per cent of a orally labeled dose of vitamin B₁₂ was excreted; this was raised to 11.0 per cent when the oral vitamin B₁₂ dose was supplemented with hog intrinsic factor concentrate.

The diagnosis of early Addisonian pernicious anemia was made and the patient was discharged on maintenance injections of vitamin B₁₂.

It is of interest that the diagnosis could have been made two years earlier. In 1956 the patient had a single episode of Henoch Schonlein purpura with melena and microscopic hematuria. She was hospitalized throughout the course of that episode. Seven hematocrits ranged from 32 to 36 per cent and reticulocyte counts varied from 0.7 to 2.2 per cent. No red counts or hemoglobin determinations were made. A bone marrow aspirate was obtained and reported as showing myeloid hyperplasia with eosinophilia and nothing else of interest. However, review of that marrow specimen at Montefiore Hospital in 1958 revealed the presence of large metamyelocytes and red cell precursors with more finely divided chromatin than normal (i.e. intermediate megakaryoblasts) such as were seen in the bone marrow aspirated in 1958.

Of further interest is the fact that when an episode of syncope occurred during the 1956 hospitalization a thorough neurologic examination was performed. The findings were: Vibration slightly depressed at ankles. Ankle jerks absent. Hypoaesthesia distal phalanx left middle finger. May have mild peripheral neuropathy, evidence equivocal.

Had the hematologic and neurologic findings been given the attention they deserved, the diagnosis of Addisonian pernicious anemia would have been made two years earlier. Luckily in this particular instance there was no marked progression of the neurologic damage during the period of delay and no permanent irreversible damage was done. Incidentally hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes and macrocytes were noted in the 1956 bone marrow specimen when it was reviewed two years later and they were undoubtedly also present in the peripheral blood. In only one of the six peripheral blood smear reports obtained in 1956 was the presence of macrocytes noted (and ignored); the presence of hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes was not even mentioned.

The most prominent symptoms and signs of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency disease are recorded in TABLES 3 and 4 adapted from

TABLE 3—Symptoms of Vitamin B Deficiency Disease

	Pre Liver Series		Edinburgh Series 1944-56 Davidson
	1908 Cabot Boston	1923 Linton London	
No. of cases	1,200	11	250
Weakness and tiredness	90%	91%	90%
Disynctia	83%	—	0%
Sore tongue	43%	91%	23%
	(of 37 cases)	(134 cases)	
Diarrhoea	51%	26%	9%
Constipation	33%	—	16%
Parasthesiae	100%	—	38%

TABLE 4—Signs of Vitamin B Deficiency Disease

	Pre Liver Series		Edinburgh Series 1944-56 Davidson
	1908 Cabot Boston	1923 Linton London	
No. of cases	1,200	11	250
Fever	9%	1	2%
Jaundice	—	—	Uncommon
Mucous membranes (red and ulcerated)	4%	—	2%
	(15 cases)		
Chronic atrophic glossitis (pale and smooth)	—	—	64%
Splenomegaly	2	18	8%
Splenic cord enlargement	11	—	0%
Mucous membrane	—	—	6%
Splenomegaly	4	—	1
Perpheral blood			
< 1 million R.B.C. cmm	10%	Average	58%
< 1 million R.B.C. cmm	1	1.39 million	1%

From DAVIDSON. 5. Clinical picture of pernicious anaemia prior to introduction of liver therapy in 1946 and in Edinburgh subsequent to 1944. *Brit. Med. J.* 1:243 1947.

Sir Stanley Davidson's recent article on the differences in the clinical picture of pernicious anaemia before and since the introduction of liver therapy.⁴²⁹ These differences are due to generally earlier diagnosis in those geographic areas where adequate

facilities for such early diagnosis exist. In those areas where such facilities either do not exist or are not used to advantage the frequency of the various signs and symptoms of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency approximates that observed in the prelever era.

The most frequent initial symptoms are weakness, dyspnea, paresthesia and sore tongue any or all of which may precede the onset of overt anemia by years.

An 82 year old woman had wandered from clinic to clinic for 10 years complaining of constant tingling in her hands, weakness and occasionally a sore tongue and dyspnea. Infrequent hemoglobin determinations were always above 10 Gm/100 ml of blood. The usual diagnosis made was *neurosis and multi-vitamins* (sometimes containing folic acid) were the usual therapy. When finally seen at the Bronx Municipal Hospital Center she had gross generalized neurologic damage and marked megaloblastic anemia with a hemoglobin of 4.6 Gm. She stated her skin color had been lemon yellow for at least two years. The diagnosis of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency disease was made and confirmed by a serum vitamin B₁₂ level of 10 µg/ml (1.1 Leishman as an).⁴⁴³ Failure to absorb vitamin B₁₂ was demonstrated by a modified Schilling test⁴ but it was not possible subsequently to determine whether the absorptive defect was correctable by exogenous intrinsic factor because the patient developed vomiting and diarrhea and died in uremia associated with a chronic pyelonephritis after a period of rise in BUN and impaired consciousness.

When this case was being prepared for presentation at a clinical pathologic conference the records of the various clinics in which she had been seen during the preceding 12 years were examined. Each of the many times she was seen by a new doctor comment was recorded of her complaints of paresthesia, weakness and dyspnea. Not once was vitamin B₁₂ deficiency considered. Yet persistent symmetrical paresthesias of the fingers (or toes) are a major clue to the possible existence of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency and thorough evaluation of this possibility is always indicated.⁴⁴⁵

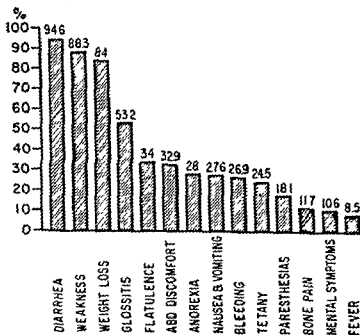
The folic acid deficiency states present a similar clinical picture to that of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency with the exceptions noted at the beginning of this chapter. Pure folic acid deficiency is rarely seen and the actual clinical picture usually observed is that of folic acid deficiency combined with other deficiencies.

and often associated with gross disorder of gastrointestinal function

In the malabsorption syndrome the most frequent symptoms are diarrhea weakness and weight loss all of which occur in more than 1 of every 5 patients^{1,4} Glossitis occurs in approximately half the cases paresthesia in almost 20 per cent and mental symptoms in about 10 per cent The neurologic symptoms are possibly due in large part if not completely to associated vitamin B₁₂ deficiency

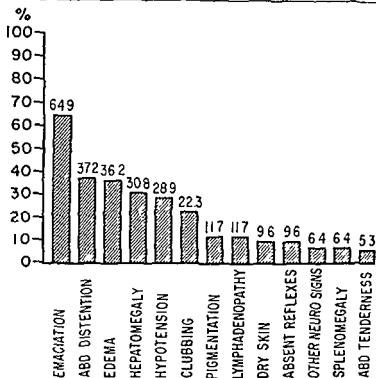
The major symptoms and signs of the malabsorption syndrome are noted in TABLE 5 AND 6 adapted from a presenta-

TABLE 5—Major Symptoms of the Malabsorption Syndrome



1. F. J. B. M. A. F. I. W. A. N. C. I. AND A. D. E. R. B. I. R. D. Clinical aspects of the malabsorption syndrome (idiopathic type). J. Mount Sinai Hosp. (New York) 1: 16-17. Simultaneously published in A. D. E. R. B. I. R. D. Ed. The Malabsorption Syndrome. New York: Grune and Stratton, 1951.

TABLE 6—Major Signs of the Malabsorption Syndrome



From BO SAK F T, WANG C I AND ADLERSBERG D. Clinical aspects of the malabsorption syndrome (idiopathic sprue). J Mount Sinai Hosp (New York) 24:286, 1957. Simultaneously published in ADLERSBERG D, Ed. The Malabsorption Syndrome. New York: Grune and Stratton, 1957.

tion⁴⁴ at a recent symposium on the malabsorption syndrome held at the Mount Sinai Hospital, New York.

The clinical picture in those conditions other than the vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid deficiency states which are sometimes associated with a megaloblastic marrow is that of the underlying condition (hemolytic anemia, etc.).

Pernicious anemia is associated with an increased incidence of carcinoma of the stomach, as noted in the section "Lesions which Destroy the Gastric Mucosa," and this entity must be

looked for in every patient with addisonian pernicious anemia. It is also of importance that every patient with cancer of the stomach be evaluated for possible vitamin B₁₂ deficiency caused by inability to produce intrinsic factor.

The incidence of gall bladder disease in patients with pernicious anemia is considerably greater than chance.⁴⁵⁻⁴⁸ This may be due in large part to the fact that pernicious anemia is a hemolytic anemia in addition to being an anemia with inadequate production of circulating erythrocytes.⁴⁴⁻⁴⁸ In pernicious anemia there is an increased random destruction of not only the patient's own erythrocytes but also of transfused normal red cells.⁴⁹ The resulting hyperbilirubinemia leads to an increased concentration of bilirubin in the bile with a large amount of bile pigment from sources other than the mature circulating erythrocytes⁴⁹ perhaps arising mainly from rapidly destroyed young erythrocytes.⁴⁶ This in turn may lead to the precipitation of pigment in the gall bladder, cholelithiasis and cholecystitis.⁴⁶¹⁻⁴⁶¹

The serum bilirubin of untreated patients with addisonian pernicious anemia is generally in the range of 1 mg/100 ml.⁴⁶ and may or may not be of a degree sufficient to produce the light lemon yellow skin coloration classically associated with untreated pernicious anemia.

Clear-cut relationships between pernicious anemia per se and diseases other than those already mentioned have not yet been established but may exist. One such disease is gouty arthritis.⁴⁶ It is obvious, however, that the fortuitous presence of another disease can alter the usual clinical picture of any of the megaloblastic anemias.

Acute liver destruction such as occurs with acute hepatitis may completely mask vitamin B₁₂ deficiency disease.⁴⁶³⁻⁴⁶⁴ The liver damage releases residual vitamin B₁₂ stores into the blood stream⁴⁶⁵ and apparently thereby makes them available for hematopoiesis.

7 *Differential Diagnosis*

1 CLINICAL

THE SINGLE MOST USEFUL TOOL in separating the megaloblastic anemias is an adequate history. This should include detailed inquiry into the quantity of animal protein and fresh green vegetables consumed in an average week. The author has seen the comment "diet adequate" on the charts of 3 patients with megaloblastic anemia of obscure etiology. Conversation with the patients revealed that 2 of them had substituted alcohol for almost all solid food for periods in excess of a year and the third was a strict vegetarian! The first 2 had dietary folic acid deficiency associated with chronic alcoholism and cirrhosis; the third had dietary vitamin B₁₂ deficiency. The proper diagnosis was confirmed by appropriate tests and response to therapy in all 3 patients.

Familiarity with the most frequent causes of megaloblastic anemia in various geographic areas helps in differential diagnosis. Every physician should be familiar with the most common causes of megaloblastic anemia in his own area. For example, in the New York metropolitan area the two most common causes of megaloblastic anemia are pernicious anemia and the malabsorption syndrome in their various subdivisions (see CHAPTER 4). The malabsorption syndrome is the most common cause of megaloblastic anemia in that large segment of the New York City population composed of recent migrants from Puerto Rico; pernicious anemia is more common in the rest of the New York population generally.

Age is important: pernicious anemia is very uncommon under the age of 40 (see CHAPTER 1).¹⁴ Origin of the patient should be ascertained: persons from the Scandinavian countries are more likely to have pernicious anemia or fish tapeworm anemia; those from England, Ireland, and Canada have a greater chance of having pernicious anemia; patients from India may have nutritional vitamin B₁₂ deficiency because of religious dietary restric-

tions (those with nutritional folic acid deficiency due to dietary inadequacy because of poverty are less likely to travel)

The presence of nervous system involvement indicates vitamin B₁₂ deficiency. Nervous system damage due solely to folic acid deficiency with concomitant vitamin B₁₂ deficiency adequately excluded has never been described in the literature to the author's knowledge and the author has never seen such a case. In the presence of a megaloblastic anemia barring the fortuitous presence of unrelated neurologic disease, nervous system involvement indicates vitamin B₁₂ deficiency with or without concomitant folic acid deficiency. It never indicates folic acid deficiency alone. This delineation is so clear that it has been suggested that neurologic damage associated with megaloblastic anemia be referred to as vitamin B₁₂ neuropathy.⁴⁰

Each of the symptoms and signs of nervous system involvement mentioned in CHAPTER 3 should be looked for carefully, since only one or two may be present. This is especially true in vitamin B₁₂ deficiency without overt megaloblastic anemia when only careful examination of the peripheral blood smear suggests the diagnosis.

If the patient has been taking multivitamins containing folic acid, especially if the amount of folic acid in them is in excess of 10 mg per day, the peripheral blood picture may be almost or even completely normal. It is quite possible that the lack of parallelism between the degree of hematopoietic and nervous system damage in vitamin B₁₂ deficiency states is primarily a function of the highly variable dietary folic acid ingestion (and possibly absorption as well) from patient to patient. Regardless of diet, however, the author has never seen a patient with vitamin B₁₂ neuropathy not taking multivitamins who did not have macroovalocytes and hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes in the peripheral blood.

Diarrhea strongly suggests the malabsorption syndrome and folic acid deficiency, often accompanied by vitamin B₁₂ deficiency. However, it should be remembered that diarrhea also occurs not infrequently in pernicious anemia.⁴¹ Conversely, the

absence of diarrhea rules against the malabsorption syndrome but does not exclude it ⁴⁶ *

This is especially true of adult coeliac disease of which many cases have been described with bowel movements appearing normal in both quality and quantity ^{381 4 4 46 46} Some of these cases had macrocytosis in a few a megaloblastic marrow was described The author has seen 2 patients with megaloblastic anemia related to occult adult coeliac disease Both had single daily normal formed stools no history of diarrhea low serum vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid levels intrinsic factor in their gastric juice by in vitro assay and inability to absorb an oral test dose of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ either without or with added hog intrinsic factor concentrate In both balance studies revealed defective fat absorption and produced steatorrhea In both patients the megaloblastic anemia disappeared after intramuscular vitamin B₁₂ administration and oral folic acid therapy Similar cases including one with only partial remission after combined vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid administration were reported prior to the wide availability of serum vitamin B₁₂ determinations and description of the Schilling test ³⁸⁴

In pregnant women and infants folic acid deficiency is by far the most likely cause of megaloblastic anemia

When the usual signs and symptoms of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid deficiency are lacking more obscure causes of megaloblastic like anemia must be sought These include hidden malignancies especially leukemia and hemolytic anemias of various types

Thorough knowledge of the information contained in CHAPTERS 4 and 5 will make differential diagnosis of the megaloblastic anemias a relatively simple matter for the careful clinician In areas where laboratory confirmation of the diagnosis is unavailable therapeutic trial constitutes the time honored method of differentiating the folic acid deficiency states from those due to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency ⁴⁴⁴

Therapeutic trial carries with it the danger that either vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid may produce a temporary remission in

patients whose primary deficiency is of the other agent thus leading the physician into improper therapy (see CHAPTER 8). For this reason only a single small dose or single small daily doses should be given to the patient in such a trial.

The patient should be maintained on a diet low in folic acid and vitamin B₁₂ for at least two days prior to the test (preferably for a week) and throughout the test period. A single 1 μ g injection of vitamin B₁₂ is then given and the reticulocyte count observed daily or at least every other day for seven to 12 days.⁴⁶⁵ If there is no reticulocytosis of significance the patient is next given 0.5 mg of folic acid subcutaneously and reticulocytosis sought as previously.

Daily doses of 0.4 mg of folic acid for 10 days have proved acceptable in therapeutic trials. Such a course of therapy induces hematologic response only in patients with folic acid deficiency.⁴⁶⁶ More study of the relative value of a single small dose of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid vs. daily small doses in therapeutic trials is needed. Daily small doses may be more reliable.

Variants of the procedure using similar oral rather than parenteral small doses of each vitamin may be used to test absorption provided the status of the patient is good enough to allow the time to carry out peroral studies of about one week each prior to parenteral vitamin administration. (Peroral studies should be performed first because parenteral administration of the appropriate vitamin will always produce a greater reticulocyte response and the method of serial reticulocyte responses to test agents should be carried out with the weaker agent given first. One μ g of vitamin B₁₂ given by mouth is less potent than the same dose parenterally because even in a completely normal subject complete absorption from the gastrointestinal tract is rare; the same is true of oral versus parenteral doses of folic acid.)

II LABORATORY^{465b}

A Gastric Acidity

The most widely used laboratory aid to the separation of the megaloblastic anemias is the determination of gastric acidity.⁴⁶⁹

If the patient is over the age of 50 the presence of free acid almost rules out pernicious anemia completely if he is under 50 then the presence of free acid makes pernicious anemia less likely but does not rule it out entirely^{131 133}

Achlorhydria in a patient past the age of 40 is of only moderate significance in terms of the possibility of pernicious anemia. Approximately 15 per cent of people between the ages of 40 and 60 have histamine refractory achlorhydria as do about 25 per cent of individuals between ages 60 and 70 and 30 per cent of persons over the age of 70.^{4 6}

Since intubation of the patient is unpleasant tubeless gastric analysis has become popular.^{471 4} While this method for determination of gastric acidity is simple it is unreliable in the presence of renal disease gastric obstruction diarrhea and malabsorption syndrome^{4 3} as well as in gastrectomized patients and individuals with a rapid gastric emptying time.

Tubeless gastric analysis involves the ingestion by the patient of a cation exchange resin to which is bound quininium azure A or another cation. If there is free acid in the stomach the hydrogen ions will replace the cation on the resin which will then be absorbed into the blood stream and released in the urine where its quantity may be measured and thereby provide a measure of the amount of hydrogen ions (i.e. of free acid) in the stomach. Unfortunately cations in the small intestine will also exchange with the cation on the resin making it important to examine only the urine voided within two hours of ingestion of the resin which will contain only cation which was released in the stomach. However if the patient has a fast gastric emptying time even the urine voided within two hours of ingestion of the resin may contain cation released in the small intestine and an erroneous impression of free acid in the stomach may be given.

Unexplained results positive for free acid have occurred in the presence of achlorhydria proven by intubation frequently enough to make the azure A resin test of dubious value in the detection of diseases associated with achlorhydria.⁴⁷⁴ The author

has seen 2 patients with pernicious anemia in whom the correct diagnosis was ruled out by an intelligent house staff because the presence of free acid was reported on tubeless gastric analysis with azure A resin. The diagnosis was ruled back in by insisting on intubation and demonstrating the absence of free acid in the gastric aspirate. It is unknown whether the erroneous results were due to an error in technic such as chewing of the resin granules by the patients or collection of the urine specimen more than two hours after ingestion of the resin.

Although tubeless gastric analysis using azure A resin cannot at present be recommended, the older tubeless method using a quinimum resin appears to be more reliable and may be a useful screening procedure.⁴⁷¹⁻⁴⁷⁴

B Assay of Intrinsic Factor in Gastric Juice

In vivo assay of intrinsic factor content of gastric juice is accomplished by taking the gastric aspirate from a donor (the patient) and giving it to a recipient who is known to have no intrinsic factor along with a small dose of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ in a Schilling type test (see C below). Alternatively the donor's gastric juice may be given to an untreated patient with known pernicious anemia along with 1 μ g of vitamin B₁₂. A hematologic response of the recipient unless due to a fortuitous spontaneous remission would rule out lack of intrinsic factor in the donor.

In vitro assay of intrinsic factor in human gastric juice has been reported recently.⁴⁷⁵⁻⁴⁷⁸ This procedure obviates the need for more than a few ml of gastric juice from the patient and also eliminates the need for a recipient. In the author's hands when the gastric juice has been frozen immediately after collection this assay has proved generally accurate as an indication of the presence or absence of intrinsic factor in the gastric juice of achlorhydric patients. Great care in interpretation of results is required especially in the presence of mucus (including salivary mucus) which binds vitamin B₁₂,⁴⁷⁷⁻⁴⁷⁸ or of bile which may contain nonradioactive vitamin B₁₂.⁴⁷⁹⁻⁴⁸⁰ Free acid and

If the patient is over the age of 50 the presence of free acid almost rules out pernicious anemia completely if he is under 50 then the presence of free acid makes pernicious anemia less likely but does not rule it out entirely^{131 133}

Achlorhydria in a patient past the age of 40 is of only moderate significance in terms of the possibility of pernicious anemia. Approximately 15 per cent of people between the ages of 40 and 60 have histamine refractory achlorhydria as do about 25 per cent of individuals between ages 60 and 70 and 30 per cent of persons over the age of 70⁴⁷⁰

Since intubation of the patient is unpleasant tubeless gastric analysis has become popular^{471 47} While this method for determination of gastric acidity is simple it is unreliable in the presence of renal disease gastric obstruction diarrhea and malabsorption syndrome⁴⁷³ as well as in gastrectomized patients and individuals with a rapid gastric emptying time

Tubeless gastric analysis involves the ingestion by the patient of a cation exchange resin to which is bound quinimum azure A or another cation. If there is free acid in the stomach the hydrogen ions will replace the cation on the resin which will then be absorbed into the blood stream and released in the urine where its quantity may be measured and thereby provide a measure of the amount of hydrogen ions (i.e. of free acid) in the stomach. Unfortunately cations in the small intestine will also exchange with the cation on the resin making it important to examine only the urine voided within two hours of ingestion of the resin which will contain only cation which was released in the stomach. However if the patient has a fast gastric emptying time even the urine voided within two hours of ingestion of the resin may contain cation released in the small intestine and an erroneous impression of free acid in the stomach may be given.

Unexplained results positive for free acid have occurred in the presence of achlorhydria proven by intubation frequently enough to make the azure A resin test of dubious value in the detection of diseases associated with achlorhydria⁴⁷⁴ The author

ducible in any one laboratory (see TABLES 7 AND 8) Determination of whether a given result represents a low serum vitamin B₁₂ level should be based on normal controls in the same laboratory not on results in other laboratories

Ochromonas malhamensis is the most specific assay organism *Euglena gracilis* is next in specificity first in sensitivity *Lactobacillus leichmannii* and *Escherichia coli* are less specific and sen-

TABLE 7—Serum Vitamin B₁₂ Concentrations in Normal Subjects

Author	Date	Number of subjects	Serum B ₁₂ (μg/ml)		Test organism
			Range	Mean	
Ross	1950	17	5.0 to 100	490	<i>E. Jena</i>
Mollin and Koss	1952	106	100 to 900	300	<i>Euglena</i>
Hennrich and Lahann	1953	—	6 to 460	238	<i>Euglena</i>
Killander	1953	56	100 to 100	300	<i>E. Jena</i>
Leary et al	1954	50	290 to 856	5	<i>E. Jena</i>
Libby and Beard	1954	57	86 to 460	210	<i>Euglena</i>
Rosenthal and Saret	1954	24	80 to 40	900	<i>L. leichmannii</i>
Cordood	1954	50	0 to 80	300	<i>L. leichmannii</i>
Niebo et al	1954	6	910 to 1000	—	<i>L. leichmannii</i>
Okuda et al	1954	33	—	109	<i>L. leichmannii</i>
Englaub et al	1954	—	0 to 40	10	<i>L. leichmannii</i>
Leary et al	1955	54	0 to 1060	60	<i>L. leichmannii</i>
Gray	1955	111	10 to 860	430	<i>L. leichmannii</i>
Cosovicz et al	1955	90	00 to 1000	—	<i>E. coli</i>

Taken from MOLLIN D. L. AND KOSS C. I. M. (see TABLE 8 page 84)

sitive but have the advantage of rapid growth They provide assay results in 1 day as compared to 1 week for *Ochromonas* and *Euglena*

The more specific organisms are generally preferable Occasionally a less specific organism will grow on factors other than vitamin B₁₂ contained in the serum of a vitamin B₁₂ deficient patient thereby conveying the erroneous impression that the patient is not deficient in the vitamin We⁵¹ have seen a patient with proved vitamin B₁₂ deficiency (cerebral and hematologic involvement classic Schilling test result) whose serum

pepsin release nonradioactive vitamin B₁₂ from the liver thereby producing false low results. The assay using liver homogenate⁴⁻⁶ rather than liver slices⁴⁷ has proven especially susceptible to errors introduced by these various factors and cannot at present be recommended. Other sources of error in both assays include the variable amount of vitamin B₁₂ in gastric juice (from less than 40 $\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$ to more than 1500 $\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$ in our laboratory) and the variable amount of what may be degraded intrinsic factor in the gastric juice. This latter material appears able to block the receptors for intrinsic factor on liver but it appears unable to then bind vitamin B₁₂.¹⁻³

Evaluation in other laboratories will indicate any general usefulness of the *in vitro* procedure. So far it seems to be specific for intrinsic factor. *In vitro* assay procedures for intrinsic factor must be evaluated very cautiously. The first such procedure⁴⁸ proved to be nonspecific⁴⁹ and to measure only vitamin B₁₂ binding⁵⁰ a property common to many substances. That procedure conveyed the erroneous impression that intrinsic factor is lacking in patients with sprue to an even greater extent than in patients with pernicious anemia.⁴⁸ In point of fact only those patients with sprue who also have gastric atrophy have a lack of intrinsic factor as a significant etiologic factor in their megaloblastic anemia.³ Numerous observers have demonstrated intrinsic factor to be present usually in the gastric juice of patients with malabsorption syndrome by *in vivo* assay.^{115, 118, 173, 245}

C Vitamin B₁₂ Serum Levels

Microbiologic assay of serum vitamin B₁₂ concentration is rather widely available in large medical centers but not yet elsewhere. The procedure is extremely useful as an objective estimate of the degree of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency.^{3, 4, 3}

A number of different assay microorganisms with varying degrees of specificity for vitamin B₁₂ have been used to determine serum vitamin B₁₂ concentrations.^{0, 64, 4, 3, 483, 48} Results vary in different laboratories but are generally repro-

level falls first and is slowly followed by the red cell vitamin B_{12} level. Thus in 5 patients whose serum vitamin B_{12} levels had fallen to an average of $35 \mu\text{g/ml}$ the vitamin B_{12} content of the unwashed red cells still averaged $110 \mu\text{g/ml}$.⁴⁸⁷ Further studies are needed to define the possible usefulness of determining red cell vitamin B_{12} levels as a measure of general tissue depletion of the vitamin. In such studies it must be kept in mind that red cell vitamin B_{12} levels may include a large fraction of vitamin B_{12} contained in leukocytes.

In early vitamin B_{12} deficiency prior to the development of anemia and a clearly megaloblastic bone marrow and after the appearance of macroovalocytes and an increase in number of hypersegmented neutrophilic polymorphonuclear leukocytes in the peripheral blood serum vitamin B_{12} levels frequently have not fallen below the range of normal although they are always well below the mean normal value.⁴⁸⁸

D Folic Acid Serum Levels

Microbiologic assay of blood folic acid has fallen into disrepute since the demonstration that such assay does not measure folic acid but rather measures a multiplicity of factors all of which have folic acid like activity for microorganisms but none of which is folic acid.^{88, 89} Although folic acid per se is not normally present in serum it is accepted that what is measured in serum immediately after administration of folic acid orally or parenterally is folic acid itself. Theoretically however the only valid measure of folic acid depletion would be direct assay of tissue stores of this vitamin as both folic and folinic acids.^{38, 39} The next best measure would be assay of serum folic acid levels if such could be determined. Other laboratory procedures such as the indirect methods discussed in the section Tests of Folic Acid Absorption Stores and Utilization and the section Assay of Metabolic Products Found in the Urine of Folic Acid Deficient Patients must be interpreted with extreme caution. It must especially be kept in mind that since vitamin B_{12} deficiency results in deranged folic acid metabolism the metabolic prod-

vitamin B_{12} level was only $20 \mu\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$ by *L. leishmanii* assay yet with a serum vitamin B_{12} level of $1000 \mu\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$ by *L. leishmanii* assay. The result was thrice repeated prior to treatment of the patient. A similar case has been observed by Lowenstein.⁴⁸

The value of determining free B_{12} as well as total B_{12} has not been established. Free B_{12} is that quantity of the vitamin in human serum which is available to the assay microorganism.

TABLE 8—Serum Vitamin B₁₂ Concentrations in Pernicious Anemia in Relapse

Author	Date	Number of patients	Serum B ₁₂ ($\mu\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$)		Test organism
			Range	Mean	
Mollin and Ross	1951	10	<10 to 105	10	<i>Euglena</i>
Henrich and Johann	1951	—	0.01 to 30	7	<i>Euglena</i>
Kellmeyer	1953	12	<25 to 105	38	<i>Euglena</i>
Lear et al	1954	33	0 to 85	39	<i>Euglena</i>
Litney and Beard	1955	17	0 to 16	13	<i>Euglena</i>
Cuthbert	1954	36	<50 to 200	95 (25) <50 (11)	<i>L. leishmanii</i>
Nieweja et al	1954	17	<5 to 15	—	<i>L. leishmanii</i>
Englaub et al	1954	10	10 to 10	40	<i>L. leishmanii</i>
Spray	1955	17	7 to 110	—	<i>L. leishmanii</i>
Criscover et al	1954	8	50—130	75	<i>E. coli</i>

From MOLLIN D L AND ROSS C I M: The pathophysiology of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency in the megaloblastic anemias. In: Henrich H C: Vitamin B₁₂ and Intrinsic Factor. Stuttgart: Ferdinand Enke, 1957.

prior to the routine heating of the serum to release B_{12} from serum protein. The amount of free B_{12} in a given sample of serum is different for different microorganisms and different durations of incubation. The physiologic significance in man of free B_{12} is unknown although it is generally believed that it represents vitamin B_{12} not bound to protein or to any other substance.

Recent evidence⁴⁸⁶⁻⁴⁸⁷ indicates that in the normal individual the serum and red blood cell vitamin B_{12} levels are roughly equal. As vitamin B_{12} deficiency develops the serum vitamin B_{12}

E Tests of Folic Acid Absorption Stores and Utilization

Measurable amounts of folic acid appear in the serum of individuals given oral doses of 1 mg or more of the vitamin.^{4 31 400-49}

Amounts of folic acid averaging less than 10 μ g daily are normally excreted in the urine.⁴⁰³⁻⁴⁹ When folic acid is administered orally or parenterally urinary excretion is markedly increased.^{336 403 493 498}

These observations have been used to advantage in studying folic acid absorption stores and utilization.⁴ Following the subcutaneous administration of 5 mg of folic acid the urinary excretion of less than 1.5 mg in 24 hours is an indication of gross tissue depletion.³³⁶ The converse is not necessarily true (i.e. urinary excretion of more than 1.5 mg does not mean the patient is not desaturated) perhaps because of an obligatory excretion by the kidney.⁹

A similar indirect measure of the tissue stores of folic acid is determination of the rate of clearance of an intravenous dose of 15 μ g of folic acid per kg of the patient's body weight.⁴⁰⁷ This dose appears to be completely cleared after 15 minutes in nearly all patients who are clinically deficient in folic acid but not in normal control subjects. Of course since this test measures the end result of a number of phenomena rapid clearance of a test dose of folic acid can only be considered suggestive of folic acid deficiency and not conclusive for it. This is equally true for any indirect test of folic acid stores.

After saturation of the tissues by administration of 15 mg of folic acid subcutaneously for a week Girdwood³³⁶ has determined the urinary excretion of a 5 mg oral dose. He found that the excretion of less than 1.5 mg of folic acid in the subsequent 24 hour period was an indication of severe malabsorption.

While these results have been confirmed by Cox et al.¹¹ other workers found sufficient overlap in urinary excretion after the test dose in saturated normal subjects and patients with malabsorption syndrome to make interpretation of the results difficult.³¹ They proposed saturation of the folic acid-deficient

ucts of folic acid deficiency may be found in the urine of patients who have adequate ingestion and absorption of folic acid but utilize it inadequately due to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency. Failure to recognize this fact may lead to an erroneous diagnosis of primary folic acid deficiency when in fact the patient lacks only vitamin B₁. Similarly injected or orally administered folic acid may rapidly disappear into the tissues of patients with vitamin B₁ deficiency and such rapid disappearance in these cases does not indicate a primary folic acid deficiency.⁴

Because of these problems of interpretation of indirect methods of assaying folic acid deficiency states we^{459 460a 460b} decided to investigate the possibility that the folic acid like activity in human serum may in fact reflect the presence or absence of primary folic acid deficiency.

We have so far determined the serum folic acid levels of more than 100 patients with megaloblastic anemia using a modified L casei assay technic which is simple and rapid (the organism grows well within 24 hours).⁴ Low levels (below 5 m μ g of folic acid activity per ml of serum) were found in those sera from patients proved to have primary folic acid deficiency by history, inadequate response to vitamin B₁₂ therapy and/or normal serum vitamin B₁₂ levels and excellent response to folic acid administration. Those sera from patients with primary vitamin B₁₂ deficiency proved by low serum vitamin B₁₂ levels and excellent hematologic response to vitamin B₁₂ therapy had folic acid levels above 7 m μ g/ml.⁴⁶⁰ Some patients with primary deficiencies of both vitamins were uncovered; these patients proved to be ingesting grossly inadequate diets (often while pregnant) and/or to be suffering from malabsorption syndrome. All sera were obtained while the patients were fasting.

It is the author's belief that determination of the serum folic acid level may prove to rank with assay of the serum vitamin B₁₂ level as a prime laboratory tool in evaluation of all patients with megaloblastic anemia.

after a loading dose of 5 Gm of histidine. These patients were proved to be folic acid deficient by presence of low serum folic acid levels, normal serum vitamin B₁₂ levels, and excellent hematologic response to folic acid therapy after inadequate responses to vitamin B₁₂ injection. Because of this and because of the necessity for at least one and frequently more than one 24 hour urine collection (difficult to obtain from infants and incontinent adults) to study for FIGlu, we do not use FIGlu assay routinely in evaluation of patients with megaloblastic anemia at present.

Using the more precise enzymatic method, Hiatt did not observe FIGlu in the urine of a patient proved by therapeutic trial to have folic acid deficiency by Marshall, Jandl, and Castle. FIGlu did not appear after a 2 Gm loading dose of histidine (personal communication). This result adds another case to the accumulating series of patients with proved folic acid deficiency who nonetheless do not excrete FIGlu in their urine.^{10, 11}

It must be remembered that severe vitamin B₁₂ deficiency by interfering with folic acid metabolism may induce FIGlu excretion.^{11, 12} This may lead to a false diagnosis of primary folic acid deficiency (i.e., inadequate ingestion or absorption of folic acid) when in fact the only primary deficiency may be in the amount of vitamin B₁₂ in the patient's body and the patient may have only a secondary deficiency of folic acid (i.e., inadequate utilization of an adequate supply of folic acid due to insufficient vitamin B₁₂ for normal folic acid metabolism).

Recent studies^{13, 14} indicate that in folic acid deficient animals formic acid, possibly derived from tryptophan metabolism, also appears in the urine in high concentration. Assay of the concentration of this agent in urine may also prove of some use as an index of folic acid deficiency, again keeping in

Patients with vitamin B₁₂ deficiency and no determinable folic acid deficiency who nevertheless excreted FIGlu in their urine have been observed by Rucknagel, LaDu, LaTer, Seegmiller, Daft, and Silberman, Marshall, Jandl, Castle, and Hiatt, and Herbert, Baker, Frank, Palmer, Waserman, and Sobotka.

patient with 20 to 10 mg of folic acid for at least four weeks followed by oral administration of a 3 mg test dose and assay of the serum folic acid concentration one two and four hours later. In their studies peak serum concentrations in normal subjects ranged from 42 to 170 μmg of folic acid per ml of serum. Peak values below 40 μmg were found almost uniformly in patients with malabsorption syndrome.

Caution in interpreting any of these indirect tests of folic acid deficiency is warranted to avoid making an erroneous diagnosis of primary folic acid deficiency when the patient actually is suffering from a primary vitamin B₁₂ deficiency.⁴ In severe vitamin B₁₂ deficiency the disappearance of ingested or injected folic acid appears to be as rapid as it is in folic acid deficiency.^{4, 497}

F Assay of Metabolic Products Found in the Urine of Folic Acid Deficient Patients

Normally histidine is metabolized to N formimino L glutamic acid (FIGlu) which is degraded to glutamic acid in the presence of folic acid.^{499, 500} Folic acid deficiency either primary or secondary results in excretion of undegraded FIGlu in the urine.⁵⁰¹ This metabolic defect may be made more striking by feeding L histidine.⁵⁰

When folic acid deficiency is very severe high concentrations of unmetabolized FIGlu may be found in the urine.^{503, 514} In milder folic acid deficiency states it may be necessary to give the patient L histidine orally to induce FIGlu excretion in the urine.^{509, 511} Thus assay of the amount of FIGlu in the urine by microbiologic,^{504, 505} or enzymatic and spectrophotometric methods^{506, 507} may prove to be a useful measure of folic acid deficiency.

Using microbiologic methods^{504, 505} we⁵¹ have not been able without giving the patients oral load doses of L histidine to find FIGlu in the urine of some patients with megaloblastic anemias of infancy, pregnancy, poor diet and malabsorption syndrome. In some of these cases we did not find FIGlu in the urine even

after a loading dose of 5 Gm of histidine. These patients were proved to be folic acid deficient by presence of low serum folic acid levels, normal serum vitamin B₁₂ levels, and excellent hematologic response to folic acid therapy after inadequate responses to vitamin B₁₂ injection. Because of this and because of the necessity for at least one and frequently more than one 24 hour urine collection (difficult to obtain from infants and incontinent adults) to study for FIGlu, we do not use FIClu assay routinely in evaluation of patients with megaloblastic anemia at present.

Using the more precise enzymatic method, Hiatt did not observe FIGlu in the urine of a patient proved by therapeutic trial to have folic acid deficiency by Marshall, Jandl, and Castle. FIGlu did not appear after a 2 Gm loading dose of histidine (personal communication). This result adds another case to the accumulating series of patients with proved folic acid deficiency who nonetheless do not excrete FIGlu in their urine.^{50, 51}

It must be remembered that severe vitamin B₁₂ deficiency, by interfering with folic acid metabolism, may induce FIClu excretion.^{51, 52} This may lead to a false diagnosis of primary folic acid deficiency (i.e., inadequate ingestion or absorption of folic acid) when in fact the only primary deficiency may be in the amount of vitamin B₁₂ in the patient's body, and the patient may have only a secondary deficiency of folic acid (i.e., inadequate utilization of an adequate supply of folic acid due to insufficient vitamin B₁₂ for normal folic acid metabolism).

Recent studies^{51, 51a} indicate that in folic acid deficient animals formic acid, possibly derived from tryptophane metabolism, also appears in the urine in high concentration. Assay of the concentration of this agent in urine may also prove of some use as an index of folic acid deficiency, again keeping in

Patients with vitamin B₁₂ deficiency and no detectable folic acid deficiency who nevertheless excreted FIGlu in their urine have been observed by Rucknagel, LaDu, LaTer, Seegmiller, Daft, and Silverman, Marshall, Janell, Castle, and Hiatt, and Herbert, Baker, Frank, Palmer, Waserman, and Sobotka.

mind the caution that in severe vitamin B₁₂ deficiency folic acid metabolism may be disturbed

G Tests of Vitamin B₁ Absorption

Absorption of vitamin B₁ may be measured following the oral administration of physiologic (two μ _B or less) doses of radioactive cobalt labeled vitamin.³ This may be done by determining the amount of radioactivity in the feces (Heinle Welch test)^{5,15} the plasma,⁴ the liver (Cliss test)¹⁷ or the urine (Schilling test).^{4,1} The relative merits of these four methods have recently been carefully appraised.³

In terms of ease, speed of execution and minimal retention of radioactivity by the patient, the clinically most useful test at the present time is measurement of the percentage of the oral dose subsequently found in the urine; this is generally known as the Schilling test after its originator.^{4,1} Plasma radioactivity determination is simpler, but radioactive cobalt labeled vitamin B₁ of high enough specific activity for accurate measurement in the conventional well type counter of a plasma sample is not widely available.

The author prefers a modified form^{4,9,18} of the Schilling test because the original test requires a longer waiting period between test doses and a two hour delay between oral and parenteral doses of vitamin B₁ which reduces the adaptability of the test for outpatients.^{4,19} Additionally a single 24 hour urine collection following a single intramuscular injection of vitamin B₁ as a flushing dose may occasionally lead to misdiagnosis. Patients with renal disease have delayed vitamin B₁ excretion and the first 24 hour urine collection may be misleadingly low.^{9,1} The author has observed delayed excretion of radioactive vitamin B₁ occasionally in the absence of any determinable renal disease. The most striking case in this regard was a 37 year old woman with transverse myelitis in whom neuropathy due to vitamin B₁ deficiency was suspected and in whom determination of the serum B₁ level was valueless due to recent B₁ therapy. She excreted 12 per cent of the oral dose

in the first 24 hours and 12 per cent in the second 24 hour period. Had a single 24 hour collection been made the erroneous conclusion of inability to absorb vitamin B₁ would have been made. (In a repeat test this patient displayed a normal excretion pattern. The cause of the delayed excretion in the first test is unknown.)

The 2 μ g oral dose of radio B₁ as originally proposed by Schilling^{4,1} is probably preferable to smaller doses. It appears to just saturate the physiologic intrinsic factor dependent system for B₁ absorption which lesser doses do not.^{5,18} This saturation results in more highly reproducible tests than those with smaller doses which are affected more by small changes (such as mixture with small amounts of nonradioactive vitamin B₁ in the stomach and small intestine).

Oral radio B₁ doses in excess of 2 μ g invalidate the Schilling test as a measure of the physiologic intrinsic factor dependent mechanism of vitamin B₁ absorption. A significant aliquot of such supraphysiologic doses (i.e. doses much greater than the amount of vitamin B₁ in a well balanced meal) may be absorbed independently of the intrinsic factor dependent system (see page 20).

The modified Schilling test is performed as follows:^{4,9,5,18} 2 μ g of radioactive cobalt labeled vitamin B₁ is given to the patient by mouth separated from food by at least two hours. One mg of nonradioactive vitamin B₁ is injected intramuscularly immediately after the oral dose of labeled vitamin. All urine is collected in the ensuing 24 hour period. A second flushing injection of 1 mg nonradioactive vitamin B₁ is given to wash much of the remaining labeled vitamin out of the body and again the urine is collected for 24 hours. The radioactivity in the two urine collections is determined in an appropriate radioactivity counting apparatus and recorded as per cent of the oral dose.

If desired the radioactivity may be concentrated by evaporation or more difficult methods³ prior to counting. The evaporation procedure⁵ consists in thorough mixing of the en

mind the caution that in severe vitamin B₁₂ deficiency folic acid metabolism may be disturbed

G Tests of Vitamin B₁₂ Absorption

Absorption of vitamin B₁₂ may be measured following the oral administration of physiologic (two μ g or less) doses of radioactive cobalt labeled vitamin.³ This may be done by determining the amount of radioactivity in the feces (Heimle Welch test)¹⁵ the plasma¹⁶ the liver (Cliss test)¹⁷ or the urine (Schilling test).^{4, 18} The relative merits of these four methods have recently been carefully appraised.³

In terms of ease speed of execution and minimal retention of radioactivity by the patient the clinically most useful test at the present time is measurement of the percentage of the oral dose subsequently found in the urine this is generally known as the Schilling test after its originator.^{4, 18} Plasma radioactivity determination is simpler but radioactive cobalt labeled vitamin B₁₂ of high enough specific activity for accurate measurement in the conventional well type counter of a plasma sample is not widely available.

The author prefers a modified form^{4, 10, 18} of the Schilling test because the original test requires a longer waiting period between test doses and a two hour delay between oral and parenteral doses of vitamin B₁₂ which reduces the adaptability of the test for outpatients.^{4, 19} Additionally a single 24 hour urine collection following a single intramuscular injection of vitamin B₁₂ as a flushing dose may occasionally lead to misdiagnosis. Patients with renal disease have delayed vitamin B₁₂ excretion and the first 24 hour urine collection may be misleadingly low.^{10, 21} The author has observed delayed excretion of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ occasionally in the absence of any determinable renal disease. The most striking case in this regard was a 37 year old woman with transverse myelitis in whom neuropathy due to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency was suspected and in whom determination of the serum B₁₂ level was valueless due to recent B₁₂ therapy. She excreted 1.2 per cent of the oral dose

TABLE 9—Range of Urinary Excretion of an Oral Dose of μg of Radioactive Vitamin B₁₂ Measured as Per Cent of the Oral Dose

Day	Oral Treatment	Normals	Pernicious Anemia	Sprue
1	Vitamin B ₁₂ alone	4.1-29.2	0.0-2.7	0.1-2.2
		0.1-0.0	0.0-1.5	0.1-0.6
3	B ₁₂ + Intrinsic Factor	5.6-29.4	2.0-16.4	0.0-1.5
4		1.4-12.8	0.1-10.3	0.1-1.1

TABLES 9 AND 10 delineate the range and average of the urinary radioactive vitamin B₁₂ excretion in normal subjects patients with pernicious anemia and patients with malabsorption syndrome (sprue syndrome) as determined by Ellenbogen and Williams (personal communication) for the modification of the Schilling test described above.^{4,9,18} In general terms normal 48 hour values are never below 5 per cent of the 2 μg oral dose and values below 3 per cent invariably indicate defective absorption. Tests giving results between 3 per cent and 5 per cent should be repeated.

As a general rule in pernicious anemia the excretion of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ should be increased at least fivefold by the addition of intrinsic factor. In malabsorption syndrome the addition of intrinsic factor may occasionally increase the excretion of vitamin B₁₂ as much as twofold (e.g. excretion over 48 hours may be 2 per cent with B₁₂ alone and 4 per cent with added intrinsic factor).

Recent work^{3,140} raises the question as to whether it is of

TABLE 10—Average Urinary Excretion of an Oral Dose of μg of Radioactive Vitamin B₁₂ Measured as Per Cent of the Oral Dose

Day	Oral Treatment	Normal	Pernicious Anemia	Sprue
1	Vitamin B ₁₂ alone	10.5 (14)	0.1 (104)	0.7 (1)
2		4.4 (4)	0.3 (100)	0.3 (6)
3	B ₁₂ + Intrinsic Factor	12.1 (23)	1.9 (18)	0.7 (8)
4		3 (0)	3.3 (111)	0.4 (8)

Figures in parentheses represent the number of patients

The author is indebted to Drs L. Ellenbogen and W. L. Williams for TABLES 9 and 10.

tire 24 hour urine collection measurement of the total volume and transfer of a 500 ml aliquot to a 1 or 2 liter Erlenmeyer flask. Twenty five ml of concentrated nitric acid are added to the aliquot and it is heated to boiling with the addition of boiling chips as needed. The nitric acid appears to inactivate the components of the urine responsible for foaming thus allowing the urine to boil vigorously on a hot plate without foaming over. Boiling is continued until the total volume is less than 50 ml at which time it is transferred to a suitable container and made up to 50 ml with tap water. This volume is suitable for counting on a flat scintillation crystal the most inexpensive type available.

If the amount of radioactivity excreted in 48 hours is below the range of normal careful inquiry is made to exclude a false low invalid result caused by loss of the radioactive vitamin B₁₂ orally (vomiting) rectally (diarrhea) or by incomplete urine collection. A valid low result means the patient is absorbing an inadequate quantity of vitamin B₁₂ because of either gastric or intestinal disorder and repetition of the entire 48 hour procedure is mandatory with the patient this time ingesting a standard dose of hog (or human) intrinsic factor concentrate with the oral dose of radioactive vitamin B₁₂.

This second test period allows division of patients unable to absorb vitamin B₁₂ into two groups those whose absorption of vitamin B₁₂ is corrected to normal by intrinsic factor and those whose absorption is not so corrected. The former group includes all patients with inadequate or absent secretion of intrinsic factor as the cause of their megaloblastic anemia the latter includes those with vitamin B₁₂ deficiency due to small intestinal disorder. The former group also includes some patients with fish tapeworm in this special situation the worms may compete successfully for vitamin B₁₂ with the host's intrinsic factor supply but may not be successful when the host's intrinsic factor is aided by an exogenous supply (especially when the radioactive vitamin is bound to the exogenous intrinsic factor before it reaches the site of localization of the tapeworm).

8 *Therapy*

PROPER TREATMENT of any of the megaloblastic anemias follows accurate differential diagnosis. Since nearly all of the megaloblastic anemias are due to deficiency of vitamin B₁₂, folic acid or both, either or both of these agents provide specific therapy in most cases.

In the absence of complications such as concomitant iron deficiency or another disorder affecting the hematopoietic system, adequate specific therapy is followed by a dramatically rapid hematopoietic response.¹³ Within a maximum period of about eight hours after the start of therapy, the megaloblasts in the bone marrow begin to be replaced by normoblasts. This process is almost complete within two days and is nearly always complete within about a week.

In the peripheral blood, morphologic return to normal is much slower. The Arneeth count shifts to the right, gradually returns to normal over a period of one or two months, and the macroovalocytes usually disappear over a period of one to three months.

The rapid generation of erythrocytes results in an outpouring of reticulocytes into the peripheral blood, with the maximal reticulocytosis being observed about the fourth to the twelfth day after the start of treatment. The larger the therapeutic dose, the earlier in this period is the maximal reticulocytosis usually observed. By the same token, the lower the patient's circulating erythrocyte count at the start of specific therapy, the greater will be the relative number of reticulocytes to mature erythrocytes in the peripheral blood (i.e., per cent reticulocytosis) with therapy.

The rate of rise of the red cell count and the packed cell volume (hematocrit) is greatest immediately following the peak rise in the reticulocyte count. The rapidity of increase in erythrocytes then tapers off, and normal values are usually attained in approximately four to eight weeks after the start of treatment.

clinical value to repeat the Schilling type test a third time using an oral dose of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ and simultaneous injection of 0.25 mg of carbamylcholine chloride (Carbachol). This third test would be reserved for those patients with inadequate secretion of intrinsic factor causing inadequate vitamin B₁₂ absorption correctible by addition of intrinsic factor. Carbachol by stimulating gastric secretion of intrinsic factor would separate those patients *capable* of secreting an adequate quantity of intrinsic factor from those *not* capable of doing so.

Such separation is of great value in helping to understand the cloudy etiology of the varying forms of pernicious anemia (see CHAPTER 4) and is an extremely desirable research undertaking. In terms of clinical usefulness, however, such separation may not be of great value since regardless of whether or not the patient is *capable* of secreting intrinsic factor under intensive stimulus with Carbachol, if such secretion does not occur *in physiologic circumstances* the patient will develop megaloblastic anemia due to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency. This is well illustrated in a case report.¹³⁸

For this reason, plus the fact that Carbachol is a very powerful parasympathomimetic agent which may be used only with great care in patients who are seriously ill,⁴⁸ Carbachol stimulation is not recommended for routine use in evaluation of patients with megaloblastic anemia. After the anemia has been adequately treated, providing the patient has no complicating disorder, it would be of interest to determine the effect of Carbachol on vitamin B₁₂ absorption.

It must be kept in mind constantly that while the Schilling test is used as a measure of vitamin B₁₂ absorption, it in fact measures the end product of the processes of absorption, transport, retention, and renal excretion of the vitamin. Anything affecting any of these four major variables will affect the test result. Thus, before concluding that absorption of vitamin B₁₂ has been measured, it must be ascertained that there are no abnormalities of the other three variables.

Very slow conversion from a megaloblastic to a normoblastic marrow frequently occurs in patients with malabsorption syndrome even when they are treated with both vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid. Associated deficiencies of protein, pyridoxine, iron, and other substances involved in hematopoiesis undoubtedly play a role in this slow response.

Use of either vitamin B₁ or folic acid alone therapeutically without determination of the etiology of the megaloblastic anemia cannot be condemned too strongly. Folic acid administration will often produce temporary hematologic remission with eventual relapse in the patient who is vitamin B₁₂-deficient, presumably through mobilization of the dwindling body stores of vitamin B₁₂.¹¹ However, it has been repeatedly demonstrated that this procedure allows the development and progression of neurologic damage.^{1, 7, 10, 3}

Indeed, it has been suggested that folic acid administration may accelerate the speed of development of neurologic damage in the vitamin B₁₂ deficient patient. Both vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid are involved in the synthesis of nucleic acids for blood formation⁴³ (see CHAPTER 3) but only vitamin B₁₂ is required to maintain the integrity of the nervous system⁴⁴ (see CHAPTER 6). Administration of folic acid to the vitamin B₁₂ deficient patient produces a drop in the already low serum vitamin B₁₂ level which is proportional to the degree of the hematologic response³⁴ and thereby presumably deprives the nervous system still further by drawing the body's small remaining vitamin B₁₂ reserves into blood formation at the expense of the nervous system.⁷¹

In view of these facts, shotgun administration of multi-vitamin preparations and hematronics has rightly received strong condemnation.¹³ Such preparations usually contain sufficient folic acid to support hematopoiesis and thereby mask the diagnosis of pernicious anemia while allowing neurologic damage due to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency to progress. Even as little as 0.3 mg of folic acid, an amount which will seldom support hematologic function in pernicious anemia,³ may support such

When circumstances allow the hematologic response to therapy should be documented by observing the erythrocyte leukocyte platelet and reticulocyte counts the hematocrit and hemoglobin and the appearance of the peripheral blood smear. These observations should be made just prior to the start of therapy and at weekly intervals thereafter for the first month then every two weeks during the second month. In addition the reticulocyte count should be determined every two days from the start of treatment until the reticulocyte peak has been passed.

Determination of the serum iron level has proved valuable in quickly assessing the effectiveness of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid therapy.³⁻⁴ Characteristically the serum iron level is elevated in untreated megaloblastic anemia regardless of whether it is due to deficiency of vitamin B₁₂ or of folic acid. Within 24 hours after administration of the appropriate agent there is nearly always an abrupt and striking fall of the serum iron; this is observed in practically all cases by 18 hours if the therapy is adequate. Values tend to fall to about 50 to 60 μ m of iron per 100 ml of serum within the 48 hour period and remain at that level until the blood count returns to normal. If the therapeutic dosage is too small the serum iron tends to rise shortly after it has fallen. If overt iron deficiency is impending the serum iron falls to values below 40 μ g/100 ml with a range from 11 to 39 observed in 9 cases.⁴

In this connection it should be noted that the presence of a normal serum iron level or the presence of iron in the bone marrow of a patient with *untreated* megaloblastic anemia does not necessarily indicate adequate iron stores for maintenance of normal hematopoiesis. Generalized siderosis is frequent in megaloblastic anemia even among peoples consuming iron deficient diets.⁴⁰⁹ Much of this iron may be derived from disruption of intracellular iron containing enzymes and not from hemoglobin.⁴⁰⁹ Therefore only if storage iron is noted in the bone marrow *after* specific treatment of megaloblastic anemia can associated iron deficiency be ruled out.

Very slow conversion from a megaloblastic to a normoblastic marrow frequently occurs in patients with malabsorption syndrome even when they are treated with both vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid. Associated deficiencies of protein, pyridoxine, iron, and other substances involved in hematopoiesis undoubtedly play a role in this slow response.

Use of either vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid alone therapeutically without determination of the etiology of the megaloblastic anemia cannot be condemned too strongly. Folic acid administration will often produce temporary hematologic remission with eventual relapse in the patient who is vitamin B₁₂ deficient, presumably through mobilization of the dwindling body stores of vitamin B₁₂.^{1, 2, 3} However, it has been repeatedly demonstrated that this procedure allows the development and progression of neurologic damage.^{1, 2, 7, 30-3}

Indeed, it has been suggested that folic acid administration may accelerate the speed of development of neurologic damage in the vitamin B₁₂ deficient patient. Both vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid are involved in the synthesis of nucleic acids for blood formation¹³ (see CHAPTER 3) but only vitamin B₁₂ is required to maintain the integrity of the nervous system.^{4, 5} (see CHAPTER 6) Administration of folic acid to the vitamin B₁₂ deficient patient produces a drop in the already low serum vitamin B₁₂ level which is proportional to the degree of the hematologic response³⁴ and thereby presumably deprives the nervous system still further by drawing the body's small remaining vitamin B₁₂ reserves into blood formation at the expense of the nervous system.¹¹

In view of these facts, shotgun administration of multi-vitamin preparations and hematinics has rightly received strong condemnation.¹³ Such preparations usually contain sufficient folic acid to support hematopoiesis and thereby mask the diagnosis of pernicious anemia while allowing neurologic damage due to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency to progress. Even as little as 0.3 mg of folic acid, an amount which will seldom support hematologic function in pernicious anemia,³⁵ may support such

function when supplemented by the amount of folic acid in the patient's diet

Particularly pernicious is the uncontrolled widespread public promotion and sale of geriatric vitamin preparations containing folic acid.³⁰ The sales campaigns for these preparations are aimed directly at the elderly part of the population in which nearly all cases of pernicious anemia occur. The hapless victims of these campaigns are those individuals with vitamin B₁₂ deficiency due to lack of intrinsic factor who purchase with their geriatric vitamins an excellent chance for irreversible neurologic damage. Such sales are not controlled by law and the promoters will not remove folic acid from their preparations for fear of not being able to compete with other complete vitamin supplements.

Because of the seriousness of the neurologic damage which results from prolonged vitamin B₁₂ deprivation when the condition of the patient makes therapy necessary prior to establishment of the etiology of the megaloblastic anemia vitamin B₁₂ should be the initial therapeutic agent⁵³¹ and should be given by injection.

In the folic acid deficient patient treatment with small doses of vitamin B₁₂ may aggravate the clinical manifestations of the folic acid lack.⁵³ Severe painful glossitis atrophy of the lingual papillae and cheilosis may develop or grow worse. It is not known whether the same phenomena may occur when large doses of vitamin B₁₂ are used but presumably they would.

In general terms temporary hematologic remission in the vitamin B₁₂ deficient patient is more frequently accomplished with folic acid than is such remission in the folic acid deprived patient when vitamin B₁₂ is administered. Most B₁₂ deficient patients will sustain a temporary hematologic remission the first time they are given folic acid. The period of remission becomes shorter with each subsequent course of folic acid until eventually the patient becomes totally refractory to this agent with development of a hypocellular nonmegaloblastic bone marrow.

and subsequently only a slow response to vitamin B₁₂ unassociated with a reticulocyte response^{1, 418}

Folic acid is unnecessary and unwarranted in the treatment of pure vitamin B₁₂ deficiency states such as that associated with pernicious anemia. It is true, however, that folic acid metabolism is interfered with in vitamin B₁₂ deficiency. For example, folic acid rather than folinic acid is normally stored in the liver.^{34, 39, 9} In vitamin B₁₂ deficiency, however, a sizable portion of the liver store consists of folic acid.³⁴ This suggests that the ability to convert folic acid to folinic acid and possibly to convert folic acid into any metabolically useful form may depend in large part on the availability of vitamin B₁₂.

Subnormal folic acid levels have been found in the *whole blood* of some patients with pernicious anemia in relapse,^{4, 3} but *serum* folic acid levels have been normal in all such cases.⁴⁸⁹ Other findings suggestive of possible folic acid deficiency in patients with pernicious anemia have included reduction in urinary excretion of folic acid before and shortly after vitamin B₁₂ therapy, lowering of the blood folic acid levels following vitamin B₁₂ injections, and rapid clearance of intravenously injected folic acid in some patients with untreated pernicious anemia.^{3, 14, 38}

In their review of folic acid and vitamin B₁₂ interrelationships in pernicious anemia, supplemented by 12 years of their own studies, Will and his associates⁷¹ point out that the various findings suggestive of associated folic acid deficiency in pernicious anemia are susceptible of other interpretations, primarily in terms of interference in folic acid metabolism due to lack of vitamin B₁₂. They observe that folic and folinic acid in serum may be used more rapidly in hematopoiesis with tissue stores being used later, and that tissue depots may more avidly take up and retain folic and folinic acid when the vitamin B₁₂ supply is inadequate.

Thus, while there is at present no direct evidence of inadequate stores of folic acid (although folinic acid stores may be depleted) in vitamin B₁₂ deficiency states,³⁴ normal folic acid

metabolism does appear to be dependent on an adequate supply of vitamin B₁₂ which may be involved in release of folic acid from its tissue conjugates facilitation of the reduction of folic acid to folinic acid and in other biochemical mechanisms promoting the formation of N¹⁰ formyl tetrahydrofolic acid⁷¹ currently believed to be the major active folic acid metabolite⁶⁶

In summary there is probably no folic acid deficiency generally in patients with pernicious anemia in terms of *supply* of folic acid but there is probably a folic acid deficiency in terms of *impaired utilization* of folic acid due to lack of vitamin B₁₂. Similar impaired utilization of folic acid probably occurs in all of the vitamin B₁₂ deficiency states. The degree of impaired folic acid utilization is probably proportional to the degree of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency.

Hematologic response of the folic acid deficient patient to vitamin B₁₂ administration is frequently incomplete and may not occur at all. Almost every hematologist has had the experience of giving as much as 0.1 to 1 mg of vitamin B₁₂ to a patient with megaloblastic anemia and observing that the marrow remained megaloblastic. Such cases almost invariably turn out to be caused by folic acid deficiency and respond dramatically to administration of this agent.

I VITAMIN B₁₂

A Parenteral

The only uniformly reliable way to administer vitamin B₁₂ is by intramuscular or deep subcutaneous injection. The vitamin B₁₂ deficient patient requires sufficient vitamin B₁₂ by this route of administration both to produce remission and to build up the depleted body stores of this vitamin^{34-36, 539}. In this connection it is an interesting fact that not all of the liver stores of vitamin B₁₂ are available for blood formation. Patients with pernicious anemia may sometimes be noted to have a spontaneous remission if they develop hepatitis^{463, 464} which releases

the liver vitamin B_{12} stores into the blood stream^{46 540} It must be remembered that vitamin B_1 is required wherever nucleoprotein synthesis is taking place and this involves almost every tissue in the body not only the hematopoietic and nervous systems

A great deal of research has been devoted to an attempt to establish an ideal treatment schedule for the vitamin B_{12} deficiency states caused by inability to absorb the vitamin⁵⁴¹⁻⁵⁴⁸ This work has shown that 90 to 95 per cent of an initial injected dose up to 50 μg is retained but the percentage retained of doses over this amount falls rapidly at a rate that is different for each patient

Thus within 48 hours after injections of 100 to 1000 μg of vitamin B_1 from 50 to 98 per cent of the injected dose may appear in the urine⁵⁴³ although many patients may retain as much as 40 per cent of an initial 1000 μg dose⁴

A single injection of 20 μg of vitamin B_1 will raise the serum level of a pernicious anemia patient to normal for about one to three weeks The period for which serum B_1 levels remain normal increases by smaller and smaller increments as the quantity of vitamin injected is increased so that an injection of 160 μg may keep the serum B_1 normal for about two to seven weeks and an injection of as much as 1000 μg for only about five to eight weeks⁴⁶

These studies all indicated that the capacity of the serum and tissues to absorb vitamin B_1 is limited to a certain maximum per unit time and excess amounts of vitamin over this capacity are rapidly excreted In addition patients who lack intrinsic factor may have a reduced serum vitamin B_1 binding capacity⁴⁷ although this has not yet been firmly established This may be related to a possibly inadequate mechanism for storage of vitamin B_1 which has not yet been demonstrated^{109 06}

However there are good arguments nonetheless in favor of initial therapy with large doses of vitamin B_1 and of maintenance with similar doses (Vitamin B_1 is nontoxic even when given in single doses as high as 3000 μg ^{48 549}) The vitamin B_1

deficient patient achieves a normal serum B_{12} level with a single injection of less than 300 μg but this level is in the low part of the normal range. Cerebrally normal levels in the range of the normal mean are only achieved (after a single injection) when the amount injected is in excess of 300 μg .⁴⁰

Resaturation of the body stores of vitamin B_{12} takes place more rapidly when large doses are given.⁴⁰ Recent studies suggest that even with such doses resaturation is difficult to achieve within a three week period.⁴¹

Should future studies demonstrate that vitamin B_{12} is stored in the human liver as a B_{12} coenzyme as it may be in rabbit liver⁴² such a B_{12} coenzyme may prove to saturate the body stores more readily.

It has also been noted that a significant build up in the vitamin B_{12} content of the spinal fluid can be obtained rapidly with daily injections of 1000 μg of vitamin B_{12} .⁴³ This may be of significance in recovery from neurologic damage and in aborting further such damage especially if in contrast to other tissues the brain takes up B_{12} more slowly but shows a steady increment in the amount stored with continued injections.⁴⁴ In cases with neurologic involvement it is not yet clear whether continuous administration of daily large doses of vitamin B_{12} is really more valuable than administration of moderate doses. Evaluation is complicated by difficulty in determining how much improvement is owing to the treatment itself and how much is owing to the frequent visits to the patient and testing of his dexterity and concern as to his mood.⁴⁵

While 1 μg day has been generally accepted as the minimal maintenance requirement for vitamin B_{12} , approximately 6 μg day may prove a better estimate for optimal well being of the patient.

Keeping all of the above in mind the most rational approach to therapy with vitamin B_{12} at the present time in the private practice of medicine is the administration of 1000 μg of vitamin B_{12} (in 1 ml of solution) every other day for a total of 5 doses as initial treatment to replenish substantially the body

stores followed by injection of 500 to 1000 μg /month as a maintenance dosage. The initial injections should be given every other day rather than every day because the percentage retention of each dose is substantially reduced if it is given only 24 hours after a prior dose^{541 546}

When there is neurologic damage initial treatment should probably include 10 to 15 doses of 1000 μg at daily intervals followed by 1000 μg once or twice weekly for several months then gradual spacing of the interval between doses ending with 1000 μg at monthly intervals after a period in excess of a year when it appears no more neurologic recovery is likely to occur^b

At some future date a reliable depot vitamin B₁₂ preparation may be developed which will allow a longer interval between maintenance doses. An insoluble complex of vitamin B₁₂ zinc and tannic acid is now being studied as such a repository preparation. Early reports mention no undesirable local or systemic effects due to the zinc or tannate^{547 5}. Further evaluation is required to be certain such effects do not occur and that the slowly released material is in fact vitamin B₁₂ in a form available for human metabolism.

It is true that most patients can be maintained on monthly injections of vitamin B₁₂ as low as 50 μg ⁵⁴⁸ or 100 μg ⁵⁴⁹ but this may not always be adequate to maintain the body stores and to maintain the patient in hematologic and neurologic remission in the face of any increased metabolic requirement or decreased capacity to respond to vitamin B₁₂ such as accompanies illness (A possible case in point⁵⁵⁰ has been alluded to in the section Inability to Utilize Vitamin B₁₂)

Maintenance therapy must continue for the lifetime of the patient who lacks intrinsic factor. This must be forcefully explained to the patient to prevent his forgetting all about it after the first injections of vitamin B₁₂ produce a typical dramatic subjective and objective improvement. The patient who assumes after the first injections that he is cured often winds up in relapse with irreversible neurologic damage.

deficient patient achieves a normal serum B_{12} level with a single injection of less than 300 μg but this level is in the low part of the normal range. Genuinely normal levels in the range of the normal mean are only achieved (after a single injection) when the amount injected is in excess of 300 μg .⁴⁶

Resaturation of the body stores of vitamin B_{12} takes place more rapidly when large doses are given.⁴⁶ Recent studies suggest that even with such doses resaturation is difficult to achieve within a three week period.⁴

Should future studies demonstrate that vitamin B_{12} is stored in the human liver as a B_{12} coenzyme as it may be in rabbit liver^{41a} such a B_{12} coenzyme may prove to saturate the body stores more readily.

It has also been noted that a significant build up in the vitamin B_{12} content of the spinal fluid can be obtained rapidly with daily injections of 1000 μg of vitamin B_{12} .⁴³ This may be of significance in recovery from neurologic damage and in aborting further such damage especially if in contrast to other tissues the brain takes up B_{12} more slowly but shows a steady increment in the amount stored with continued injections.⁴⁹ In cases with neurologic involvement it is not yet clear whether continuous administration of daily large doses of vitamin B_{12} is really more valuable than administration of moderate doses. Evaluation is complicated by difficulty in determining how much improvement is owing to the treatment itself and how much is owing to the frequent visits to the patient and testing of his dexterity and concern⁴⁵ to his mood.⁵¹

While 1 μg /day has been generally accepted as the minimal maintenance requirement for vitamin B_{12} , approximately 6 μg /day may prove a better estimate for optimal well being of the patient.

Keeping all of the above in mind the most rational approach to therapy with vitamin B_{12} at the present time in the private practice of medicine is the administration of 1000 μg of vitamin B_{12} (in 1 ml of solution) every other day for a total of 5 doses as initial treatment to replenish substantially the body

ciency This should include thorough monthly examination of a peripheral blood smear for macroovalocytosis and an increase in the number of hypersegmented polymorphonuclear leukocytes and complete neurologic examination. Where facilities for serum vitamin B₁₂ determination are available this should also be obtained at bimonthly intervals.

1 Vitamin B₁₂ Alone

The absorption of physiologic (0.5 to 2 μg) amounts of vitamin B₁₂ is primarily dependent on the presence of intrinsic factor and a functionally normal small intestine. In a patient who lacks intrinsic factor and has megaloblastic anemia, any remission occurring while ingesting such doses (obtainable in a good diet) falls in the category of a spontaneous remission^{76, 60, 6, 6} perhaps related in part to folic acid in the diet.

Oral maintenance therapy with physiologic doses of vitamin B₁₂ is reserved exclusively for patients whose vitamin B₁₂ deficiency was the result solely of inadequate ingestion of the vitamin or a corrected inadequate absorption uncomplicated by defective gastric secretion of intrinsic factor or malabsorption of vitamin B₁₂.

The absorption of supraphysiologic amounts of vitamin B₁₂ is not intrinsic factor dependent and appears to take place by a mass action effect, possibly diffusion.^{93, 9, 11, 5, 9, 60} About 1.5 μg of a 50 μg dose is absorbed mainly through this mechanism and about 15 μg of a 1000 μg dose.^{5, 7}

Thus, some patients whose vitamin B₁₂ deficiency was caused by inadequate or absent secretion of intrinsic factor and who have no small intestinal disorder may be maintained on small oral doses of as little as 15 to 50 μg daily,⁸ though relapse is frequent.⁸ Probably most patients may be marginally maintained by daily doses in excess of 100 μg .^{96, 5, 9, 50} Weekly single oral doses of 1000 μg have been successful in maintaining a large group of such patients, but their serum vitamin B₁₂ levels tend to be suboptimal, as do the serum levels of patients taking 50 μg three times daily.⁶⁰ Therefore, oral maintenance with

Because of the increased incidence of gastric cancer in patients with pernicious anemia it may be wise to evaluate the patient at yearly intervals for a possible early gastric malignancy. Such evaluation may include roentgen studies as well as gastroscopy and microscopic study of gastric cells obtained by aspiration or by abrasive techniques.⁵ It should certainly include thorough questioning of the patient for any symptoms of possible gastric origin. Such questioning is best done informally and without undue emphasis to avoid cancerophobia.

Those few cases in which absorptive defect for vitamin B₁₂ is correctible by surgery (structural abnormalities of the small intestine) may cease receiving maintenance therapy after such surgical correction and after demonstration that the ability to absorb vitamin B₁₂ has been made normal is confirmed by a Schilling test or another test of B₁₂ absorption.

Patients whose vitamin B₁₂ deficiency was due to dietary inadequacy or fish tapeworm may have their maintenance therapy terminated when their ingestion of vitamin B₁₂ is adequate and anthelmintic therapy has expelled the worms. Before such termination it should be determined by a Schilling test or other study that during the period of vitamin B₁₂ deprivation the patient did not lose the ability to produce intrinsic factor because of gastric atrophy resulting from the vitamin deficiency.

B Oral

Initiation of treatment for vitamin B₁₂ deficiency should always be with parenteral administration of the vitamin. In the best circumstances even in a normal gastrointestinal tract absorption of vitamin B₁₂ is extremely limited. It has not yet been demonstrated that it is possible to fill the depleted body stores of the B₁₂ deficient patient using any oral preparation.

Once repletion of the body stores has been accomplished by parenteral administration of vitamin B₁₂, one of the various oral preparations may be used for maintenance in certain selected patients *provided the patients are carefully checked at regular intervals for any evidence of recurrent vitamin B₁₂ defi*

hog intrinsic factor concentrate is due to development of resistance to some component of the concentrate. The absorption block may be partially or completely overcome by very large doses of concentrate.^{9, 11, 4} Normal human gastric juice will still enhance vitamin B₁₂ absorption after partially purified hog intrinsic factor concentrates fail.^{10, 9} For some reason relatively unpurified preparations of hog stomach and pyloric mucosa have not been associated with the development of resistance.⁹

Antibody to some component of hog intrinsic factor concentrates may develop in the blood of patients on prolonged oral vitamin B₁₂ intrinsic factor concentrate therapy,¹⁷ but no relation has been demonstrated between the presence of such antibody and refractoriness to such oral treatment. It has not yet been determined whether this antibody is to intrinsic factor itself or to a contaminant in the concentrates. The antibody appears *in vitro* to precipitate human intrinsic factor concentrate as well as that from hogs,¹⁸ but whether the specific precipitate is intrinsic factor or another substance to which intrinsic factor loosely attaches has not been determined. A possible culprit may be blood group A substance which is present in the most highly purified hog intrinsic factor concentrate currently available,¹⁷ just as it is found in less purified concentrates.^{18, 11} Rabbits immunized to hog intrinsic factor concentrate¹¹ (or to A substance) do not produce anti A₁glutinins.

As has been suggested,¹⁶ it is possible that a local antibody reaction to some component of heterologous intrinsic factor concentrate may develop at the hypothetical intestinal receptor site for intrinsic factor^{11, 11} resulting in rejection of such intrinsic factor.

At the present time maintenance therapy with oral vitamin B₁₂ hog intrinsic factor concentrates (or concentrates from other animal species than man) should be used only with constant extreme vigilance against the development of refractoriness including serial estimation of the vitamin B₁₂ levels of serum.^{12, 17} It is possible that pure intrinsic factor when isolated will be an

vitamin B₁₂ at weekly intervals requires administration of more than 1000 μ g each week.¹¹⁻¹⁴

In general, oral treatment should not be employed if small intestinal dysfunction exists.

Oral treatment with vitamin B₁₂ alone may be effective when the patient is very diligent in taking every dose of medication and returns at regular intervals no more than a month apart for thorough evaluation of his hematologic, neurologic, and general clinical status, preferably with determination of his serum vitamin B₁₂ level as well. However, oral therapy with vitamin B₁₂ even in the best of circumstances is not as reliable as parenteral therapy and cannot be recommended.

2 Vitamin B₁₂ Plus Hog Intrinsic Factor Concentrate

A priori, it would appear that ideal therapy for the patient who lacks intrinsic factor would be oral administration of the substance specifically lacking. This is especially true if intrinsic factor proves to be involved in vitamin B₁₂ transport and storage as may possibly be the case.^{10, 12, 108, 109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114} It is of great interest in this connection that the most active vitamin B₁₂ containing enzyme fraction of rat liver precipitates in 40 to 60 per cent ammonium sulfate¹¹⁵ which is almost identical to the 35 to 55 per cent ammonium sulfate concentration in which intrinsic factor precipitates.¹¹⁶

Concentrates of intrinsic factor derived from hog gastric pyloric and duodenal mucosa have been used successfully to maintain patients who lack intrinsic factor.⁵¹⁻⁵³ However, an increasing number of cases have been reported in which maintenance therapy with some oral vitamin B₁₂ partially purified hog intrinsic factor combinations has been associated with development of inability of the patient to absorb the combined product and eventual failure of such treatment.^{110, 111, 117} This phenomenon has not occurred to a great extent in two series of patients, however.^{5, 73}

The evidence so far suggests that long term failure of oral therapy with heterologous preparations of partially purified

whose baseline secretion of intrinsic factor is low but in whom administration of a secretagogue stimulates normal intrinsic factor output¹¹¹⁻¹¹³

There are two immediately obvious mechanisms whereby an added agent may enhance vitamin B₁₂ absorption in a normal subject (1) by stimulating gastric secretion of intrinsic factor and (2) by combining with vitamin B₁₂ in a bond which is only broken in the alkaline medium of the small intestine. The latter mechanism is effective because for unknown reasons vitamin B₁₂ which bypasses the stomach is better absorbed than vitamin B₁₂ which passes through the stomach in uncombined form.¹¹⁴⁻¹¹⁶ Other mechanisms may exist but they are as yet undefined.

The only way the practicing physician can protect his patients from useless oral therapies is to ignore the pharmaceutical firm advertisements that flood his mail and his medical journals and rely on treatment that he knows has stood the test of time. The physician should realize that just because many of these oral therapies are promoted only on an ethical basis i.e. only to physicians such promotion is no guarantee of efficacy.

Other than for their content of vitamin B₁₂ alone oral therapy with vitamin B₁₂ and the various absorption enhancing agents has no place in the treatment of megaloblastic anemias at the present time.

II FOLIC ACID

Folic acid in oral doses of 5 to 10 mg daily is effective in the treatment of most cases of folic acid deficiency.⁹⁻¹² An occasional refractory patient may require a larger dose¹¹⁷ but such patients may suffer from multiple deficiencies and require correction of such deficiencies rather than larger doses of folic acid. Cases in point are those with ascorbic acid deficiency.

It is noteworthy that even in those patients whose folic acid deficiency is due to impaired absorption of the vitamin oral therapy with 5 to 10 mg daily doses is effective. Such doses are probably considerably in excess of the minimal daily requirement for this vitamin and may pass whatever intestinal barrier

oral therapeutic agent of choice. At present such treatment can not be recommended. The most recent work available¹¹⁻¹⁵ suggests species specificity may be a problem with pure intrinsic factor.

3 Other Oral Therapies with Vitamin B₁₂ and Added Agents

From time to time a claim appears in the literature that vitamin B₁₂ combined with one agent or another is or may be effective oral therapy for pernicious anemia.⁶⁻⁸³ Such improved oral therapies usually turn out to depend for their effect primarily on their content of vitamin B₁₂ and offer no significant advantage over oral treatment with vitamin B₁₂ alone.⁹⁻⁸⁴⁻⁸⁶

A serious problem for the practicing physician as well as the public at large is the tremendous promotional campaign given almost every few months by many pharmaceutical firms to various combinations of vitamin B₁₂ and any one of a number of agents which are said to enhance markedly vitamin B₁₂ absorption. Any one of literally hundreds of agents taken orally may enhance absorption of vitamin B₁₂ *by normal individuals* but only intrinsic factor will generally enhance the absorption of vitamin B₁₂ in the patient who lacks this agent. ACTH, steroids or calcium in some cases may improve intestinal absorption of vitamin B₁₂ in patients with the malabsorption syndrome. The advertisements in medical journals of oral vitamin B₁₂ combinations with this or that miraculous absorption enhancement factor adroitly omit any mention of the basic fact that the miraculous absorption enhancement factor may only work when the patient does not need treatment with vitamin B₁₂ in the first place.

One such agent, d-sorbitol, is a hexahydric alcohol which may enhance the absorption of vitamin B₁₂ in normal individuals⁸⁷ and in persons with normal baseline ability to absorb vitamin B₁₂⁸⁸ but not in patients unable to secrete intrinsic factor.⁸⁹ If it has any effect at all, which has been questioned,⁹⁰ it may act by stimulating gastric secretion of intrinsic factor⁹¹ and may be of use in a single very limited situation—that of the patient

While they also compete with citrovorum factor which is formed in the body from folic acid and convertible to the same active form as is folic acid⁹⁶ they do not block its utilization.^{90 91 93}

IV LIVER EXTRACT

It is unlikely that liver extract has any therapeutic usefulness not due to its content of vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid. Liver extract has many disadvantages as a therapeutic agent when compared to the pure vitamins: it is more costly, less concentrated, more likely to produce pain at injection sites, and may produce allergic reactions.^{86 97}

While it is possible that another as yet not isolated factor may be present in liver extract that may be effective in a rare case of megaloblastic anemia unresponsive to vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid,⁹⁸ no such factor has yet been defined.

It has been claimed^{540 600} that there is a protein synthesis factor present in liver extracts which is neither vitamin B₁₂ nor folic acid. The claim was based on two observations: neither of which has been confirmed by most other observers. First, it was stated that reduced prothrombin times generally occur in patients with pernicious anemia and related macrocytic anemias, and that liver extracts more rapidly restore such reduced prothrombin times to normal than either vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid. Second, it was stated that liver extract restored macrocytosis to normocytosis more efficiently than vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid.

It is possible that in pernicious anemia liver stores of agents other than vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid are disturbed. There is usually an irregular pattern of liver dysfunction in pernicious anemia.⁴⁶² As to the possible need for liver extract to restore prothrombin time to normal: reduction in prothrombin time sometimes occurs in association with pernicious anemia^{6 1} but this phenomenon may well be the exception rather than the rule.⁴⁸⁴ It may be related to the anorexia, nausea, and vomiting of untreated patients.⁴⁹ When it occurs, it is restored to normal after adequate specific therapy with vitamin B₁₂ alone. The

may exist to folic acid absorption by a mass action effect. It is also possible that unconjugated folic acid is absorbed with relative ease whereas the folic acid conjugates present in food may be absorbed with greater difficulty or may have to be deconjugated prior to absorption.

It is of interest that patients with idiopathic steatorrhea who have been on adrenal steroid therapy for many years may have persistently low serum folic acid levels with macrocytosis and an Arnett count shift to the right despite ingestion of 0.25 mg. of folic acid three times daily. This suggests that the persistence of jejunal mucosal damage is accompanied by persistence of inability to absorb physiologic doses of folic acid (i.e. doses in the range of 0.5 mg. or less).

Parenteral administration of folic acid may be required in the presence of severe diarrhea and in megaloblastic anemia in infancy if there is difficulty in giving the vitamin perorally. Generally the dose given parenterally is as large as that given by mouth but doses of 1 mg. of folic acid are adequate when injected to produce remission. Repletion of body stores of folic acid may require larger doses but these may usually be given subsequently by mouth.

Maintenance therapy after repletion of the body stores may be carried out with as little as 0.25 to 0.5 mg. of folic acid daily and a good diet. The latter alone is generally effective in supplying an adequate amount of folic acid. In severe malabsorption syndromes however 5 to 10 mg. daily by mouth may be required because of persistent inability to absorb physiologic doses.

III CITROVORUM FACTOR (FOLINIC ACID)

The one specific indication for citrovorum factor therapy in doses of 3 to 6 mg. is to overcome the effects of the folic acid antagonists employed in cancer chemotherapy.¹ These agents such as Aminopterin both compete with and irreversibly block the conversion of folic acid to its metabolically useful form for periods of two to three weeks after administration.^{2,3}

Various workers have suggested an interrelationship between ascorbic acid and cyanocobalamin because untreated patients with megaloblastic anemia often have low serum ascorbic acid levels and intravenously administered ascorbic acid disappears more rapidly in the vitamin B₁₂ deficient patient than it does in the normal subject^{608 609} However the nature of the association of B₁₂ deficiency and the abnormality of ascorbic acid metabolism is by no means clear though it is evident that the latter plays no fundamental part in the production of a megaloblastic anemia in B₁₂ deficiency⁶⁰⁸ Treatment of nearly all megaloblastic anemias except perhaps some of the megaloblastic anemias of infancy and the rare cases that may occur with scurvy does not require the use of ascorbic acid nor does such use have any known value

In this connection it should be noted that the finding of *any ascorbic acid at all* in plasma or whole blood is incompatible with a diagnosis of scurvy unless the vitamin has recently been administered⁸¹ A level up to 4 mg per cent in the buffy coat of the blood is compatible with scurvy however⁶⁰

VI BLOOD TRANSFUSION

When the initial hematocrit is below 15 per cent particularly in elderly persons a single transfusion preferably of packed red cells is advisable to sustain the patient until response to vitamin B₁₂ (or folic acid) can occur⁸⁰ In the patient with dehydration associated with the malabsorption syndrome whole blood transfusion is preferable unless congestive heart failure is present In the absence of a very low hematocrit or serious complicating factors such as infections or cardiac disorders it is rarely necessary to transfuse patients with megaloblastic anemia since the response to specific therapy is rapid enough to restore the hematologic status to normal in a short time

It must be emphasized that even with a hematocrit below 15 per cent or a hemoglobin below 5 Gm/100 ml of blood more than one transfusion is rarely either needed or desirable It is

hemorrhagic manifestations sometimes seen in untreated pernicious anemia are in the author's experience uniformly associated with thrombocytopenia which clears on specific therapy and only irregularly associated with reduced prothrombin time.

Perhaps the claim of a protein synthesis factor arose in part from inclusion of patients with the malabsorption syndrome. Such patients frequently not only absorb vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid poorly thereby developing a megaloblastic anemia but also have grossly impaired absorption of vitamin K for synthesis of prothrombin and other serum factors involved in blood clotting.^{603, 604} In these patients injection of vitamin K₁ rapidly restores prothrombin, Factor VII and Stuart factor to normal.⁶⁰³ Here too no specific value of liver extract over adequate vitamin B₁₂, folic acid and vitamin K administration has been documented.

There is no objective evidence for the claim that liver extracts restore macrocytosis to normocytosis more rapidly than equivalent amounts of vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid. Treatment of the megaloblastic anemias with adequate specific therapy is generally efficient in eliminating all vestiges of the anemia including the macrocytosis. Two to four months of therapy are usually required.

V ASCORBIC ACID (Vitamin C)

The patient with megaloblastic anemia due at least in part to ascorbic acid deficiency should receive about 2 Gm. of vitamin C by mouth to resaturate his tissues administered in divided doses of 100 mg. five times a day.^{605, 607} An equal amount may be given parenterally if the patient can not take oral medication. Within 24 hours on this regimen any active bleeding ceases. After this maintenance therapy consists of 200 mg. per day until recovery is assured and 100 mg. daily thereafter. The above doses may be halved for infants.⁶⁰⁷ The maintenance requirement for ascorbic acid in infants is met by ingesting orange juice regularly and in children and adults by ingesting a well balanced diet including citrus fruits, tomatoes and vegetables.

the treatment of megaloblastic anemias other than those associated with generalized severe malabsorption

VIII OTHER THERAPY

Treatment other than as outlined above would depend on the condition causing the megaloblastic anemia. Such treatment would include insuring an adequate diet in all cases and a gluten free diet in childhood and adult coeliac disease¹⁹⁻⁴ prescribing anthelmintics in cases of fish tapeworm infestation appropriate antibiotics in the blind loop syndrome surgery where feasible to correct structural abnormalities of the small intestine and correction of endocrine disorders. In addition appropriate supportive measures are self evident as is prompt and vigorous antibiotic therapy in old patients with pernicious anemia in relapse who develop pneumonia or urinary tract infections⁵³⁶. The key to such treatment is accurate differential diagnosis of the cause of the megaloblastic anemia supplemented by thorough evaluation of the patient for any related or unrelated disorders.

deplorable that so many unnecessarily panic stricken physicians give not one transfusion but so many that circulatory overload may result ³¹ the patient is unnecessarily endangered ⁶¹⁰ and the hematologic response to therapy is masked. For these physicians a few quotes from Crosby's editorial in the journal *Blood* on the misuse of blood transfusion ⁶¹⁰ may be in order. Anemia alone is not a sufficient justification for transfusion. Most bed fast patients are comfortable with as little as 5 or 6 grams of hemoglobin. The dangers of blood transfusion infection, hemosiderosis and transfusion reaction are well known. Thoughtless prescription of blood transfusion is playing Russian roulette with bottles of blood instead of a revolver.

VII ADRENOCORTICOTROPIC HORMONE (ACTH) AND ADRENOCORTICAL STEROIDS

ACTH or the adrenocortical steroids will often correct the absorptive defect for vitamin B₁₂ associated with tropical sprue ⁹ ¹¹ ¹⁴ and are useful in the management of that disease and often of other disorders presenting with the clinical picture of the malabsorption syndrome ¹² ⁶¹ including regional ileitis ⁹. They did not correct the absorptive defect for vitamin B₁₂ in nontropical sprue in most of the cases seen by the author.

Hematologic response to adrenocortical steroid therapy has been observed in some cases of Addisonian pernicious anemia and of adult coeliac disease in 2 cases of rheumatoid arthritis associated with megaloblastic anemia and a low serum vitamin B₁₂ level despite normal vitamin B₁₂ absorption and 1 case of megaloblastic anemia after partial gastrectomy ¹⁴ ¹. In only 1 case a patient with Addisonian pernicious anemia ¹ was the absorption of vitamin B₁₂ enhanced during the steroid therapy in that case intrinsic factor secretion did not appear to have been enhanced despite the hematologic response. The mechanism of action of the steroid therapy in these few cases is unknown and the hematologic response is generally slow when it occurs at all. For these reasons steroids are not considered to have a place in

References

- 1 EHRLICH P De und Regeneration roter Blut cheiben Verhandl deutsch Gesellsch d Char (June 10 and Dec 9) 1880
- 2 REISNER E H JR The nature and significance of megaloblastic blood formation *Blood* 13 313 1958
- 3 MOLLIN D L Radioactive vitamin B₁₂ in the study of blood diseases *Brit M Bull* 15 8 1959
- 4 GIRDWOOD R H The role of folic acid in the blood disorders *Brit M Bull* 15 14 1959
- 5 WILLS L Pernicious anemia nutritional macrocytic anemia and tropical sprue a discussion *Blood* 3 36 1948
- 6 — Studies in pernicious anemia of pregnancy VI Tropical macrocytic anemia as a deficiency disease with special reference to the vitamin B complex *Indian J M Res* 1 699 1934
- 7 FOY H KONDI A AND SALMA B The anemias of the tropics India and Ceylon *J Trop Med* 61 7 1958 *Tr Roy Soc Trop Med & Hyg* 52 46 1958
- 8 DAS GUPTA C R AND CHATTERJEA J B The role of synthetic folic acid (L cases factor) in the treatment of nutritional macrocytic anemia *Ind M Gaz* 81 402 1946
- 9 FAIRLEY N H BROMFIELD R J FOY H AND KONDI A Nutritional macrocytic anemia in Macedonia A preliminary report *Tr Roy Trop Med & Hyg* 37 132 1938
- 10 TASKER P W G MOLLIN D L AND BERRIMAN H Vitamin B deficiency in the megaloblastic anemias of Malaya *Brit J Haemat* 4 167 1958
- 11 TOTTERMAN G On the occurrence of pernicious tapeworm anemia in *D phyllobothrium* carriers *Acta med scandinav* 118 410 1944
- 12 FRIEDLANDER R D Racial factor in pernicious anemia *Am J M Sc* 187 634 1934
- 13 WINTROBE M M Clinical Hematology Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1956
- 13a BINGHAM J The macrocytosis of hepatic disease I Thin macrocytosis *Blood* 14 694 1959
- 14 NORDENSON N C SEGERDAHL L STRANDELL B AND WALLMAN CARLSSON C Die Frequenz und geographische Verbreitung der pernösen Anämie in Schweden *Acta med scandinav* 9 9 1938
- 15 REISNER E H JR WOLFF J A MCKAY P J JR AND DOYLE E F Juvenile pernicious anemia *Pediatrics* 8 88 1951
- 16 EDITORIAL Age and vitamin B₁₂ metabolism *Nutrit Re* 17 40 1959
- 17 KRISTENSEN H I O AND GORMSEN H Variation in B₁₂ deficiency in uncharacteristic macrocytic anemia Comparison of bone marrow findings and vitamin B levels in plasma *Acta med scandinav* 167 415 1958
- 18 TALBER S A GOODHART R S HILL J M BLUMBERG N KASSAB J AND CHOW B F Vitamin B deficiency in the aged *Geriatrics* 1 68 1957

Summary

THE LITERATURE on the megaloblastic anemias has been reviewed with special emphasis on recent advances in knowledge and supplemented by the author's experiences and research with patients and in the laboratory. The megaloblastic anemias have been discussed in terms of their incidence, hematologic morphology, biochemical basis, etiologic classification, clinical picture, differential diagnosis, and therapy.

The heart of this monograph has been the presentation of the etiologic classification of the megaloblastic anemias. They are seen to be primarily due to inadequate ingestion, absorption, or utilization of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid. The possible causes in each case are presented.

Clear understanding of the possible causes of each of these inadequacies forms the basis for accurate differential diagnosis and, in turn, of proper and specific treatment of each case.

Rapid and accurate recognition, differential diagnosis, and treatment of a patient with a megaloblastic anemia frequently provide the richest reward in the practice of medicine: achievement of an almost overnight transformation from a moribund, seemingly hopeless state to one of vigor, health, and vitality.

- 39 SWENDSEID M E BETHELL F H AND ACKERMANN W W The intracellular distribution of vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid in mouse liver *J Biol Chem* 190,91 1951
- 40 HERBERT V STORER J AND SIATY T H Unpublished data
- 41 UNDRITZ E Sandoz Atlas of Haematology Basle Frobenius 1950
- 42 WEICKER H Hamo Zytomorphologie des B₁₂ Mangels in vivo *In* Heinrich H C Vitamin B₁₂ und Intrinsic Factor Stuttgart Ferdinand Enke 1951
- 43 FIDENBERG H AND ESTREN S Non Addisonian megaloblastic anemia The intermediate megaloblast in the differential diagnosis of pernicious and related anemias *Am J Med* 5:198 1948
- 44 DACIE J V Discussion *Brit M J* 1 02 1948
- 45 EDITORIAL The intermediate megaloblast *Lancet* 1 105 1949
- 46 MOLLIN D L The intermediate megaloblast *Brit M J* 1 302 1949
- 47 DACIE J V AND WHITE J C Erythropoiesis with particular reference to its study by biopsy of human bone marrow A review *J Clin Path* 2 1 1949
- 48 BARBIER F Un cas particulier d'hyperségmentation constitutionnelle des noyaux des neutrophiles chez l'homme *Acta haemat* 19:121 1958
- 48a PEDERSON J LUND J OHLSEN A S AND KRISTENSEN H P O Simultaneous deficiency of iron and vitamin B₁₂ Dimorphic anemia *Acta medica scandin* 163:23 1959
- 49 TROWELL H C Dimorphic anaemia deficiency of iron associated with nutritional macrocytic anaemia *Tr Roy Soc Trop Med & Hyg* 3 18 1913
- 50 THEORELL B Studies on the formation of cellular substances during blood production *Acta medica scandinavica* (suppl 200) 1 9 1947
- 51 — The relation of nucleic acid to the formation and differentiation of cellular protein Cold Spring Harbor Symposia on Quant Biol 12:47 1948
- 52 WHITE J C LESLIE I AND DAVIDSON J N Nucleic acid of bone marrow cells with special reference to pernicious anemia *J Path & Bact* 66:291 1948
- 53 MUELLER J F GLAZER H S AND VILTER R W Preliminary studies on the purine and pyrimidine bases of human bone marrow as determined by paper chromatography I Variations in pernicious anemia in response to therapy *J Clin Invest* 31:61 1952
- 54 FRIEDMAN M AND WOOD H Conversion of uracil deoxyriboside to thymine deoxyriboside *J Biol Chem* 206:45 1956
- 54a SMITH L H JR AND BAKER F T Tissue line studies in pernicious anemia *J Clin Invest* 38:1044 1959
- CASLE W B Development of knowledge concerning the gastric intrinsic factor and its relation to pernicious anemia *New England J Med* 29:603 1953
- 6 GRAHAM R M AND RHEALLY M H Characteristic cellular changes in cells of nonhemopoietic origin in pernicious anemia *J Lab & Clin Med* 43:93 1954

- 19 JONES O L Origin of neutrophils in pernicious anemia (Cooke's macro polycytes) *Arch Int Med* 60 1002 1937
- 20 ARNETH J *Qualitative Blutlehre und Blutkrankheiten* Leipzig J A Barth 1945
- 21 WINTROB M M Diagnostic significance of changes in leucocytes *Bull New York Acad Med* 15 223 1939
- 22 STORNI L *Diagnostic des Maladies du Sang*, translated into French by J Laiguetta and A Drumas Paris G Doin 1953
- 23 ARNETH J Über das qualitative Verhalten der Blutplättchen bei der Eisenioa *Folia haemat* 5/ 1 1934
- 24 FINCH C A COLEMAN D H MOTULSKY A C DONOHUE D M AND REIF R H Erythrokinetics in pernicious anemia *Blood* 11 807 1956
- 25 CAZAL L *Erythrocytes et Erythropathies* Paris Masson 1957
- 26 MALLARMÉ J The study of the myelogram in pernicious anemia and the problem of the megaloblast *Blood* 3 103 1948
- 27 — AND DEBRAY J *Les Anémies Megaloblastiques* Paris S L E S 1949
- 28 BESSIS M *Cytology of the Blood and Blood Forming Organs* translated into English by E J onder New York Grunc & Stratton 1950
- 29 REISNER E H JR AND KORSON R Micro spectrophotometric determination of deoxyribo nucleic acid in megaloblasts of pernicious anemia *Blood* 6 344 1951
- 30 PAULSON M AND HARVEY J C Hematologic alterations after total gastrectomy evolutionary sequence over a decade *JAMA* 156 156 1954
- 31 DARBY W J BRIDGFORTH E B LE BROCCLEY J CLARK S I JR DE OLIVEIRA J D KEVANY J MCGANITY W J AND PEREZ C Vitamin B₁₂ requirement of adult man *Am J Med* 25 26 1958
- 32 BOEN S I MOLHUYSEN J A AND STEENBERGEN J Nuclear changes in oral epithelial cells in subacute combined degeneration of the spinal cord due to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency *Lancet* 2 294 1958
- 33 HOLMES J M Cerebral manifestation of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency *Brit M J* 1391 1956
- 34 GIRDWOOD R H The occurrence of growth factors for *Lactobacillus* *Lactobacillus* *streptococcus faecalis* and *leuconotoc citrovorum* in the tissue of pernicious anemia patients and control *Biochem J* 5 8 1952
- 35 SWENDESD M E HYOLIBILI I SCHICK G AND HALASID J A The vitamin B₁₂ content of human liver tissue and its nutritional significance: a comparison study of various age groups *Blood* 12 94 1957
- 36 GLASS G B J Radioactive vitamin B₁₂ in the liver III Hepatic storage and discharge of CO₂B₁₂ in pernicious anemia *J Lab & Clin Med* 5 87 1958
- 37 SCHLOSSER L I DESHANDY L AND SCHULZING R F Biological turnover rate of cyanocobalamin (vitamin B₁₂) in human liver *Arch Int Med* 101 406 1958
- 38 GLASS G B J Deposition and storage of vitamin B₁₂ in the normal and diseased liver *Gastroenterolog* 36 180 1959 Paper discussed by Halsted J A Lopper H and Heinrich H C

- 3 BETHELL, F H MEYERS M C AND NELIGH R B Vitamin B₁₂ in pernicious anemia and puerperal macrocytic anemia *J Lab & Clin Med* 33 477 1948
- 6 DARBY W J JONES E CLARK S L MCGANITY W J DE OLIVEIRA J D PEREZ, C KEVANY J AND LE BROCCQUY J The development of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency by untreated patients with pernicious anemia *Am J Clin Nutrition* 6 513 1958
- 11 JAMES T H AND WILLIAMS W I Occurrence of vitamin B₁₂ in food *In* Sebrell W H and Hartis R S *The Vitamins* New York Academic Press 1954 vol 1
- 8 LEWIS U J REGISTER U D THOMPSON H T AND ELVEHJEM C A Distribution of vitamin B in natural materials *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 49 1949
- 19 KARLIN R La vitamine B₁₂ dans le lait humain et bovin *Compt rend Soc de biol* 118 371 1954
- 80 WOKES F BADENOCH J AND SINCLAIR H M Human dietary deficiency of vitamin B₁₂ *Am J Clin Nutrition* 3 310 1955
- 81 GOUNELLE H AND RICHARD J Low serum vitamin B₁₂ concentrations in alcoholics improvement with liver therapy *Am J Clin Nutrition* 6 492 1958
- 82 MOVITT E R Megaloblastic erythropoiesis in patients with cirrhosis of the liver *Blood* 5 468 1950
- 83 WATSON J LIGHTMAN H C MESSITE J ELLISON R R CONRAD H AND GINSBERG V Clinical studies with the citrovorum factor in megaloblastic anemia *Am J Med* 17 1954
- 84 JANDEL J H AND LEAR A A The metabolism of folic acid in cirrhosis *Ann Int Med* 45 1027 1956
- 8 WELLS R Nutritional vitamin B₁₂ deficiency *J Trop Med* 61 81 1958
- 86 MCINTYRE P KREVANS J R AND CONLEY C L Treatment of megaloblastic anemia *J Chron Dis* 6 287 1957
- 87 POLLACOVÉ M APT L AND COLPERT M J Pernicious anemia due to dietary deficiency of vitamin B₁₂ *New England J Med* 255 164 1956
- 88 ANDRUS E C AND WINTROBE M M Hyperthyroidism and pernicious anemia *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 59 291 1956
- 89 BOENHEIM F SCHWIMMER D AND MCGAVACK T H The combination of hyperthyroidism and pernicious anemia *Ann Int Med* 869 1945
- 90 ZIFFER H GUTMAN A PASHER I SOBOTKA H AND BAKER H Vit B₁₂ in thyrotoxicosis and myxedema *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 96 929 1957
- 91 GERSHOFF S N VITALE J J ANTONOWICZ I NAKAMURA M AND HELLERSTEIN E E Studies of interrelationships of thyroxine magnesium and vitamin B₁₂ *J Biol Chem* 231 849 1958
- 92 FORSSELL J AND HALONEN I I Thyroid function and pernicious anemia *Acta med scandinav* 166 61 1958
- 93 ROSS G I M MOLLIN D L COX E V AND LINGLEY C C Hematologic

- 57 MASSEY B W AND RUBIN C E The stomach in pernicious anemia
Am J M Sci 23, 481 1934
- 58 BOEN S T Changes in epithelial cells in vitamin B₁₂ deficiency In Heinrich
H C Vitamin B₁₂ und Intrinsic Factor Stuttgart Ferdinand Enke 1951
- 59 GARDNER F H Observations on the cytology of gastric epithelium in
tropical sprue J Lab & Clin Med 47 29 1956
- 60 JACOBSON W The mode of action of folic acid antagonists and the function
of the Leuconostoc Culture factor In Wolstenholme G E W and
Cameron M P Ciba Foundation Symposium on Chemistry and Biology
of I teridines Boston Little Brown & Co 1954
- 61 STOKSTAD E I R Some properties of a growth factor for lactobacillus casei
J Biol Chem 149 213 1943
- 62 PIFFNER I J BINKLEY S B BLOOM E S BROWN R A BIRD O D AND
EMMETT A D Isolation of the anti anemia factor (vitamin B₁₂) in crystal
line form from liver Science 9, 404 1943
- 63 RICKES E L PRISK N G KONIUSZ F R WOOD F R AND FOLKERS A
Crystalline vitamin B₁₂ Science 10, 396 1948
- 64 SMITH E L Purification of anti pernicious anemia factors from liver Nature
161 638 1948
- 65 ARNSTEIN H R V The function of vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid in the
metabolism of one carbon units In Heinrich H C Vitamin B₁₂ und
Intrinsic Factor Stuttgart Ferdinand Enke 1951
- 66 BROQUIST H I Water soluble vitamins part I (folic acid B₁₂ group
choline) Ann Rev Biochem 1, 78 1952
- 67 ARNSTEIN H R V The function of vitamin B₁₂ in animal metabolism
Biochem Soc Symposia 13-97 1953
- 68 SHINE W The functions of B vitamin in the biosynthesis of purines and
pyrimidines Vitamins & Hormones 9, 1951
- 69 JUKES T H AND STOKSTAD E I R The role of vitamin B₁₂ in metabolic
processes Vitamins & Hormones 9 1 1951
- 70 FORD J E AND HILTNER S H Role of vitamin B₁₂ in the metabolism of
microorganisms Vitamins & Hormones 13 101 1953
- 70a RUNDLE R W Hematopoietic effects of folic acid metabolites in the
megalo-blastic anemias Am J Clin Nutrition 1 385 1959
- 71 WILL J J MUELLER J F BROMINE C KISLY C F FRIEDMAN B HAWKINS
R N DELTA J AND VILTER R W Folic acid and vitamin B₁₂ in per-
nicious anemia J Lab & Clin Med 47 22 1956
- 72 SMITH E L Vitamin B₁₂ Brit M J 1 2 1956
- 73 THOMAS E D AND LOCHTE H I JR Studies on the biochemical defect
of pernicious anemia I In vitro observations on oxygen consumption
heme synthesis and deoxyribonucleic acid synthesis by pernicious anemia
bone marrow J Clin Invest 3 166 1954
- 74 HALL B F AND CAMBERI D C Vitamin B₁₂ therapy in pernicious anemia
I Effect on hematopoietic system preliminary report II Effect on the
general clinical and neurologic manifestations preliminary report I & C
Staff Meet Mayo Clin 3 584 1948 3 591 1948

- containing food (extrinsic) factor upon intravenous injection without contact with gastric (intrinsic) factor *J Lab & Clin Med* 34:1502 1949
- 108 HERBERT A. In vitro organ specificity of intrinsic factor action *Fed Proc* 17:440 1958
- 109 — AND SPAET T. H. Distribution of intrinsic factor action *Am J Physiol* 195:194 1958
- 110 — On the mechanism of action of intrinsic factor Presented to Montefiore Hospital Research Soc. December 20 1957
- 111 — Mechanism of intrinsic factor action in the isolated rat small intestine *J Clin Invest* 37:901 1958
- 112 — Mechanism of intrinsic factor action in everted sacs of rat small intestine *J Clin Invest* 38:1029 9
- 113 TAYLOR K. B. MALLETT B. J. AND SERAY G. H. Observations on the inhibitory effects of intrinsic factor preparations on vitamin B₁₂ absorption *Clin Sci* 17:64 1958
- 114 — Personal communication
- 115 ABELS J. Intrinsic Factor van Castle en Resorptie van Vitamine B₁₂ Doctoral Thesis University of Groningen Groningen A. R. B. March 11 1959
- 116 COOPER B. A. AND CASTLE W. B. Factors influencing the action of intrinsic factor in vivo *Clinical Research* 206 1959
- 117 LATNER A. L. AND MERRILLS R. J. Further observations related to the isolation of intrinsic factor mucoprotein / Heinrich H. C. Vitamin B₁₂ und Intrinsic Factor Stuttgart Ferdinand Enke 1959
- 118 WILLIAMS W. L. AND ELLENBOCK L. Purification and assay of intrinsic factor / Heinrich H. C. Vitamin B₁₂ und Intrinsic Factor Stuttgart Ferdinand Enke 1959
- 119 GLASS G. B. J. BOYD L. J. RUBINSTEIN M. A. AND SMITH C. S. Relationship of glandular mucoprotein from human gastric juice to Castle's intrinsic anemia factor *Science* 115:101 1959
- 120 WIJENGA H. G. Intrinsic factor and vitamin B₁₂ binding of tissue Purification properties and possible relationship In Heinrich H. C. Vitamin B₁₂ und Intrinsic Factor Stuttgart Ferdinand Enke 1959
- 121 FOX H. J. AND CASTLE W. B. Observations on the etiologic relationship of a human gastric to pernicious anemia IX. Difference in site of secretion of intrinsic factor in the dog and in the human stomach *Am J Med Sci* 203:15 1942
- 122 LANDBOF CHRISTENSEN L. AND PLUM C. M. Experimental study on the localization of Castle's intrinsic factor in the human stomach Anti-anemic effect of powdered human fundus and pylorus *Am J Med Sci* 15:17 1948 *ibid* 41 1950 *Acta med. Scandinav.* 144:46 1953 *ibid* 150:369 1954
- 123 KELNING I. J. ARENDS A. MANDEMA F. AND NIEWIUS H. O. Observations on the site of production of gastric intrinsic factor in the rat *J Lab & Clin Med* 53:12 1959
- 124 MILLIN D. L. BAKER S. J. AND DONACH I. Addendum pernicious anemia with gastric atrophy in a young man *Brit J Haemat* 12:8 1959
- 125 FENWICK S. On atrophy of the stomach *Lancet* 8:18 0

- responses and concentration of vitamin B₁₂ in the serum and urine following oral administration of vitamin B₁₂ without intrinsic factor *Blood* 9:43 1954
- 94 UNGLAUB W G ROSENTHAL H L AND COLDSMITH G A Studies of vitamin B₁₂ in serum and urine following oral and parenteral administration *J Lab & Clin Med* 43:147 1954
- 95 DOUGHERTOLMEN A AND HAGEN I S A dual mechanism of vitamin B₁₂ plasma absorption *J Clin Invest* 36:1551 1957
- 96 ESTREN S BRODY E A AND WASSERMAN L R The metabolism of vitamin B₁₂ in pernicious and other megaloblastic anemias *Advances Int Med* 9:11 1958
- 97 BAKER S J AND MOLLIN D I The relationship between intrinsic factor and the intestinal absorption of vitamin B₁₂ *Brit J Haemat* 1:46 1955
- 98 ADDISON T On the constitutional and local effects of disease of the suprarenal capsules London S Highley 1855 See also ADDISON T Anemia—effects of the suprarenal capsules *Lond Med Gaz* 43:311 1849
- 99 BIERNER A Über progressiv perniciose Anämie *Korresp Schweiz Arzte* 2:15 1872
- 100 VAN BONDSDORFF B Pathogenesis of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency with special reference to tapeworm pernicious anemia *In* Heinrich H C Vitamin B₁₂ and Intrinsic Factor Stuttgart Ferdinand Enke 1957
- 101 MINOT C R AND MURPHY W J Treatment of pernicious anemia by a special diet *JAMA* 8:40 1906
- 102 CASTLE W B Observations on the etiologic relationship of achylia gastrica to pernicious anemia I The effect of the administration to patients with pernicious anemia of the contents of the normal human stomach recovered after the ingestion of beef muscle *Am J M Sci* 1:8:38 1909
- 103 — AND TOWNSEND W C *Ibid* II The effect of the administration to patients with pernicious anemia of beef muscle after incubation with normal human gastric juice *Am J M Sci* 1:8:64 1909
- 104 — — AND HEATH C W *Ibid* III The nature of the reaction between normal human gastric juice and beef muscle leading to clinical improvement and increased blood formation similar to the effect of liver feeding *Am J M Sci* 189:30 1910
- 105 — HEATH C W AND STRAUSS M B *Ibid* IV A biologic assay of the gastric secretion of patients with pernicious anemia having free hydrochloric acid and that of patients with atrophic anemia or with hypochromic anemia having no free hydrochloric acid and of the role of intestinal impermeability to hematopoietic substances in pernicious anemia *Am J M Sci* 18:141 1911
- 106 BERN L CASTLE W B WELSH A D HEINLE R W ANKER R A & EPSTEIN M *Brit N Actia* Vitamin B₁₂ a food (extrinsic) factor *New England J Med* 199:11 1949
- 107 GARDNER F H HARRIS J W SCHILLING R E AND CASTLE W B *Ibid* VI Hematopoietic activity in pernicious anemia of a beef muscle extract

- 14/ WILLIAMS A W COGHILL N F AND EDWARDS F The gastric mucosa in pernicious anemia biopsy studies Brit J Haemat 44 7 1958
- 148 FABER A The etiology and pathogenesis of achylia gastrica In Lectures in Internal Medicine New York Paul B Hoeber 1951
- 149 JOSKY R A FINCH E S AND WOOD I J Gastric biopsy a study of 1000 consecutive successful gastric biopsies Quart J Med 4269 1955
- 150 ALSTED G Pernicious anemia after nitric acid corrosion of the stomach Lancet 1 6 1931
- 151 BEYERS M R DIEFENBACH W C L MARK H AND MEYER L M Interrelationship of folic acid and vitamin B₁₂ in macrocytic anemia associated with linitis plastica Acta med scandinav 147 351 1952
- 152 GOLDBAMER S M Macrocytic anemia in carcinoma of the stomach apparently due to lack of intrinsic factor Am J M Sc 195 17 19 8
- 153 KAPLAN H S AND RIGLER L G Pernicious anemia and carcinoma of the stomach autopsy studies concerning their relationship Am J M Sc 69 339 1945
- 154 MOSBECHE J AND VIDEBAEK A Mortality from and risk of gastric carcinoma among patients with pernicious anemia Brit M J 2 390 1950
- 155 ZAMCHEK N GRABLE E LEV A AND NORMAN L Occurrence of gastric cancer among patients with pernicious anemia at the Boston City Hospital New England J Med 252 1103 1955
- 156 SNAPPER I GROEN J HUNTER D AND WITTS L J Achlorhydria anemia and subacute combined degeneration in pituitary and gonadal insufficiency Quart J Med 6 195 1931 Lancet 40/ 1942
- 157 LEITHOLD S L DAVID D AND BEST W R Hypothyroidism with anemia demonstrating abnormal vitamin B₁₂ absorption Am J Med 4 535 19 8
- 158 HERBERT V Unpublished data
- 159 BOENHEIM F Addison's disease and pernicious anemia Endokrinologie 78 140 1951
- 160 BERLIN R Addison's disease familial incidence and occurrence in association with pernicious anemia Acta med scandinav 144 1 1952
- 161 PAULSEN M CONLEY C L AND GLADSDEN F S Absence of intrinsic factor from intestinal juice of patients following total gastrectomy Am J M Sc 70 310 19 0
- 162 McLEAN L D Incidence of megaloblastic anemia after subtotal gastrectomy New England J Med 27 262 1957
- 163 LOEWENSTEIN F Absorption of cobalt labeled vitamin B₁₂ after subtotal gastrectomy Blood 13 339 19 8
- 164 BADENOCH J EVANS J R RICHARDS W C D AND WITTS L J Megaloblastic anemia following partial gastrectomy and gastroenterostomy Brit J Haemat 1 339 19 5
- 165 BRODINE C FRIEDMAN B I SAENGER E L AND WILL J J The absorption of vitamin B₁₂ labeled with radioactive cobalt following subtotal gastrectomy J Lab & Clin Med 53 20 1959
- 166 a FORSHAW J W B Hyperproteinaemia after partial gastrectomy corrected by gluten free diet Brit Med J 10.0 19 8

- 125 MAGNUS H A A re assessment of the gastric lesion in pernicious anemia *J Clin Path* 11 289 1958
- 126 GLASS G B J Gastric atrophy Its clinical significance and methods of detection *Am J Digest Dis* 2 109 1957
- 127 SIURALA M Gastric lesion in some megaloblastic anemias *Acta med scandinav* 154 337 1956
- 128 DAVIDSON W M B AND MARSHON J I The gastric mucosa in iron deficiency anemia *Lancet* 2 639 1955
- 129 WITTS L J Simple achlorhydric anemia *Cuv Hosp Rep* 80 253 1930
- 130 STEVENSON T D LITTLE J A AND LANCFY I Pernicious anemia in childhood *New England J Med* 55 1219 1956
- 131 FINNEY J O Pernicious anemia unassociated with achlorhydria *Ann Int Med* 12 154 1939
- 132 ASKEY J M Addisonian pernicious anemia without achlorhydria does it exist? *Gastroenterology* 21 1914
- 133 JACOBS A Acid secretion by the stomach in pernicious anemia *Brit J Haemat* 4 465 1958
- 134 MACLACHLAN W W G AND KLINE T M Occurrence of anemia in 4 generations *Am J M Sci* 177 533 1926
- 135 CALLENDER S T AND DENBOROUGH M A A family study of pernicious anemia *Brit J Haemat* 3 88 1957
- 136 MCINTYRE P A HAHN R COLLEY C I AND GLASS B Genetic factors in predisposition to pernicious anemia *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 104 309 1959
- 137 ARBO J AND MOHR J Pernicious anemia in monozygotic twins *Acta genet et stat med* 8 105 1958
- 138 HARRIS JONES J N SWAN H T AND FIDHORE G R Pernicious anemia without gastric atrophy and in the presence of free hydrochloric acid report of a case *Blood* 7 401 1956
- 139 BAKER S J AND MOLLIN D I The relationship between intrinsic factor and vitamin B₁₂ absorption *Rev hemat* 10 160 1959
- 140 MOLLIN D L BOOTH C C AND BAKER S J The absorption of vitamin B₁₂ in control subjects in a idiopathic pernicious anemia and in the malabsorption syndrome *Brit J Haemat* 3 412 1957
- 141 LEE S HERBERT A AND WASSERMAN L R Unpublished case report
- 142 GOLDHAMER S M The presence of the intrinsic factor of Castle in the gastric juice of patients with pernicious anemia *Am J M Sc* 191 40 1936
- 143 EDITORIAL Heredity in gastric cancer and pernicious anemia *Lancet* 1 1 1954
- 144 MOSBECH J Heredity in Pernicious Anemia Copenhagen Ugeskrift Munksgaard 1955
- 145 UNGLEY C C Some current views on the origin of pernicious anemia and the absorption of vitamin B₁₂ *Tr New York Acad Sc* 14 111 1955
- 146 CONNOR H M Hereditary aspect of achlorhydria in pernicious anemia *JAMA* 94 606 1930

- 181 McINTYRE P A SACHS M A KREYAN J R AND CONLEY C L Pathogenesis and treatment of macrocytic anemia Information obtained with radioactive vitamin B Arch Int Med 99:511 1956
- 182 BOOTH C C AND MOLLIN D L The site of absorption of vitamin B₁₂ in man Lancet i 18 1959
- 183 LAFNER A L Intrinsic factor and vitamin B absorption Brit M J 7:218 1958
- 184 REYNELL I C SPRAY G H AND TAYLOR K B The site of absorption of vitamin B₁₂ in the rat Clin S 16:63 1951
- 185 HERBERT V CASTRO L AND WASSERMAN L R Localization of the effect of intrinsic factor in the rat small intestine in vitro Clinical Research 7:53 1959
- 186 BAKER S J MACKINNON N L AND VASUDEVA P Site of absorption of orally administered vitamin B₁₂ in dogs Indian J M Res 46:812 1958
- 187 CALLENDER S T AND SPRAY G H Preparation of haemopoietically active extracts from faeces Lancet i 1391 1951
- 188 ROSS G J M AND MOLLIN D L Vitamin B₁₂ in tissues in pernicious anemia and other conditions In Heinrich H C Vitamin B and Intrinsic Factor Stuttgart Ferdinand Enke 1955
- 189 ELLENBOGEN L AND WILLIAMS W L Personal communication See Tables 9 and 10
- 190 GLASS G B J Differentiation of macrocytic anemias and detection of a pernicious anemia and proof in remission by accelerated measurement of hepatic uptake of radioactive Co⁵⁷B In Proceedings of the 54th International Congress of the International Society of Hematology New York Grune & Stratton 1958
- 191 OXENHORN S ESTREN S WASSERMAN L R AND ADLERSBERG D Malabsorption syndrome intestinal absorption of vitamin B Ann Int Med 49:0 1958
- 192 COOKE W T The malabsorption syndrome in man Pathogenesis—current concepts National Vitamin Foundation Symposium March 3 1959 Am J Clin Nutrition (in press)
- 193 ADLERSBERG D The malabsorption syndrome in man Clinical and pathologic aspects National Vitamin Foundation Symposium March 3 1959 Am J Clin Nutrition (in press)
- 194 GARDNER F H The malabsorption syndrome in man Hematologic aspect National Vitamin Foundation Symposium March 3 1959 Am J Clin Nutrition (in press)
- 195 FRENCH A B The malabsorption syndrome in man Management National Vitamin Foundation Symposium March 3 1959 Am J Clin Nutrition (in press)
- 196 PANEL AND OPEN DISCUSSION The malabsorption syndrome in man National Vitamin Foundation Symposium March 3 1959 Am J Clin Nutrition (in press)
- 197 ADLERSBERG D WANG C I AND BOSCH F T Disturbance in protein and lipid metabolism in malabsorption syndrome J Mount Sinai Hosp (New

- 165b LUNDH C Intestinal ligation and absorption after gastrectomy Acta chirurg scandinav (Suppl 931) 1958
- 166 BROWN L B JR AND JUSTUS B W *In vitro* absorption of radioiron by everted pouches of rat intestine Am J Physiol 194 319 1958
- 166a MOORE C V AND DLBACH R Resorption conservation elimination and physiological iron losses In Kenderling W Ed Eisenstoffwechsel Stuttgart G Thieme 1951
- 167 BADENOCH J EVANS J R AND RICHARDS W C D The stomach in hypochromic anaemia Brit J Haemat 3 155 1957
- 168 LE J G METZGER S R HARRIS H A AND McBRIDE A Pernicious anemia due to the presence of intrinsic factor inhibitor diagnosed in childhood with a 25 year follow up Clinical Research 90 1959
- 169 CLASS C B J BOYD L J SIEGENTHALSON L AND JONES E L Metabolic interrelations between intrinsic factor and vit B₁₂ III B absorption at varied intrinsic factor doses Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 98 1 1959
- 170 CALLENDER S I AND EVANS J R Observations on the relationship of intrinsic factor to the absorption of labelled vitamin B₁₂ from the intestine Clin Sci 14 387 1955
- 171 TAYLOR K B MALLETT B J WITTS L J AND TAYLOR W H Observations on vitamin B₁₂ absorption in the rat Brit J Haemat 4 63 1958
- 172 WILLIAMS W L CHOW B I ELLENBOGEN L AND OKUDA K Intrinsic factor preparations which augment and inhibit absorption of vitamin B₁₂ in healthy individuals In Heinrich H C Vitamin B₁₂ und Intrinsic Factor Stuttgart Berlin und Link 1957
- 173 GOLDSMITH G A Nutritional anemias with special reference to vitamin B₁₂ Am J Med 25 680 1958
- 173a HERBERT V CASIRO Z AND WASSERMAN I R Unpublished data
- 174 CITRIN A DE ROA C AND HALL J A Sites of absorption of vitamin B₁₂ J Lab & Clin Med 50 667 1957
- 175 HALL J A CASIRO M AND DRENICK J J Absorption of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ after total gastrectomy New England J Med 257 161 1957
- 176 JOHNSON L C AND BERGER I S Enhanced urinary excretion of C¹⁴ vitamin B₁₂ produced by labeled release capsules Blood 13 17 1958
- 177 BIRD O D AND HEAFY B The vitamin B₁₂ binding capacity of proteins J Biol Chem 190 181 1951
- 178 BAURIEDER W R FICKEN J C JR AND UNDERKOFFER I A Reactions of cyanocobalamin and aquocobalamin with protein Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 91 377 1956
- 179 GRÄSBECK R Studies on the vitamin B₁₂ binding principle and other basic fluids of human gastric juice Acta med scandinav (Suppl 314) 1956
- 180 CASTLE W B HEATH C W STRAUSS M B AND HEINTZ R W Observations on the etiologic relationship of achylia gastrica to pernicious anemia VI Site of interaction of food and gastric factors failure of absorption to produce thermostable hematoformic principle Am J Med Sci 194 618 1957

- 215 FROST J W AND GOLDWEIN M I Observations on vitamin B absorption in primary pernicious anemia during administration of adrenocortical steroids *New England J Med* 258 1096 1958
- 216 KEELE K D The prognosis and treatment of sprue in India *Brit M J* 1 986 1949
- 17 HAZARI O K AND WOODRUFF A W Prognosis of tropical sprue *Brit M J* 2 344 19 8
- 218 COMBINED STAFF CLINIC Malabsorption syndrome *Am J Med* 15 90 1953
- 219 FRENCH J M AND HAWKINS C F The gluten free diet in idiopathic steatorrhea *Med Clin North American* 41 1 85 1957
- 19a SCHWARTZ M K SLEISINGER M F FERT J H ROBERTS K F RANDALL H F AND ALAMY T I The effect of a gluten free diet on fat nitrogen and mineral metabolism in patients with sprue *Gastroenterology* 3 32 1957
- 20 THAYSEN T F H Non Tropical Sprue London Oxford University Press 1952
- 21 ADLERSBERG D Introduction to symposium on the malabsorption syndrome *J Mount Sinai Hosp (New York)* 24 1 1957 Simultaneously published in Adlersberg D *The Malabsorption Syndrome* New York Grune & Stratton 1957
- 22 RUBIN C E BRANDBOG L L PHELPS P C AND TAYLOR H C JR Intestinal similarities between celiac disease and idiopathic sprue *J Clin Invest* 3 927 19 8
- 3 — — — AND — — — Is the intestinal pathology of celiac disease reversible? A preliminary report *Clinical Research* 7 170 19 9
- 24 FRENCH J M HAWKINS C F AND SMITH N The effect of a wheat gluten free diet in adult idiopathic steatorrhea *Quart J Med* 6 481 1957
- 25 KELLEY M L AND TERRY R Clinical and histological observations in fatal non tropical sprue *Am J Med* 5 460 19 8
- 26 THOMPSON M W Heredity maternal age birth order in etiology of celiac disease *Am J Human Genet* 3 1 9 1951
- 27 DAVIDSON L S P AND FOUNTAIN J R Incidence of sprue syndrome with some observations on natural history *Brit M J* 1 1157 19 0
- 28 ANDERSON D H AND DiSANTAGNESE P A Idiopathic celiac disease I Mode of onset and diagnosis *Pediatric* 11 20 19 3
- 29 COOKE W T Conference Anemia and the alimentary tract *Lancet* 2 255 19 8
- 30 ELLM I AND WAKBORG E Hematological change especially megalocytic anemia in regional ileitis *Acta med scandinav* 10 449 1959
- 231 CAMERON D C WATSON C M AND WITTS L J Clinical association of macrocytic anemia with intestinal stricture and anastomoses *Blood* 4 93 1949
- 2 THOMPSON R B AND UNGLEY C C Megaloblastic anemia associated with anatomic lesions in the small intestine *Blood* 10 111 19 5
- 233 HALSTED J A LEWIS I M AND GASTNER M Absorption of radioactive

- York 74 206 1957 Simultaneously published in Adlersberg D The Malabsorption Syndrome New York Grune & Stratton 1957
- 198 LATERSON J C S The sprue syndrome Am J M Sc 31 9 1956
- 199 HUNTER F M AND PREVATT A L Diagnostic methods in intestinal malabsorption Am J M Sc 36 81 1958
- 199a VOLWILER W Gastrointestinal Malabsorptive Syndromes Chicago Year Book Publishers 1959
- 200 HIMES H W AND ADLERSBERG D Pathologic changes in the small bowel in idiopathic sprue biopsy and autopsy findings Gastroenterology 33 14 1958
- 201 SHINER M Small intestinal biopsies by the oral route Histopathologic changes in the malabsorption syndrome J Mount Sinai Hosp (New York) 24 273 1957 Simultaneously published in Adlersberg D The Malabsorption Syndrome New York Grune & Stratton 1957
- 202 SMITH R B W SIRINZ H CROSBY W H AND SULLIVAN B H Icteral small bowel mucosal biopsy Am J Med 25 391 1958
- 203 SHINER M Conference Anaemia and the alimentary tract Lancet 25 19 8
- 204 COOKE W T Adult coeliac disease and other disorders associated with steatorrhea Brit M J 2 961 1958
- 205 BUTTERWORTH C E AND PEREZ SANTIAGO E Jejunal biopsies in sprue Ann Int Med 48 8 1958
- 206 HERBERT V Studies on the role of intrinsic factor in vitamin B₁₂ absorption transport and storage Symposium on Vitamin Interrelationships Medical College of Virginia Richmond October 24 1958 Am J Clin Nutrition 1 133 1959
- 207 FROST J W COLBY HN M I AND KAUFMAN B Studies of B₁₂ absorption in malabsorption syndrome results before and during specific therapy Ann Int Med 47 993 1957
- 208 JOSKE R A SHANIMA M H AND DRENNEN G D Intestinal malabsorption following temporary occlusion of the upper mesenteric artery Am J Med 25 449 1958
- 209 GRASBECK R KANIFRO I AND SILKALA M Influence of calcium ion on vitamin B₁₂ absorption in steatorrhea and pernicious anemia Lancet 1 934 1959
- 210 ASHFORD B K Sprue 11 Texts Practice of Medicine Hagerstown Md W F Prior vol 4 p 143
- 211 SPIES T D MILANES F MENENDEZ A KUCH M B AND MINNICH V Observations on the treatment of tropical sprue with folic acid J Lab & Clin Med 31 97 1916
- 212 STEFANINI M Clinical features and pathogenesis of tropical sprue Medicine 37 39 1948
- 213 GLASS G B J Intestinal absorption and hepatic uptake of vitamin B₁₂ in diseases of the gastrointestinal tract Gastroenterology 30 37 1956
- 214 DOIG A GIBBWOOD R H DUTHIE J J R AND KNOX J D E Response of megaloblastic anemia to prednisolone Lancet 966 19

- 20 BADENOCH J. The blind loop syndrome. In Jones F A. Modern Trends in Gastroenterology New York Paul Hoeber 1959
- 21 SHURALA M AND KAIPIANEN W J. Intestinal megaloblastic anemia treated with aureomycin and terramycin. Acta med scandinav 14 19 1953
- 22 BADENOCH J BEDFORD P D AND EVANS J R. Massive diverticulosis of the small intestine with steatorrhea and megaloblastic anemia. Quart J Med 4 321 1955
- 23 BURKHOLDER P R. Microbiological studies on materials which potentiate oral vitamin B therapy in Addisonian anemia. Arch Biochem 29 322 19 2
- 24 SYDERHELM R LEHMANN W AND WICHELS I. Experimentelle intestinale perniziöse Anämie beim Hund. Klin Wchnschr 1439 1954
- 25 CAMERON D G WATSON G M AND WITTS L J. The experimental production of macrocytic anemia by operations on the intestinal tract. Blood 4 803 1949
- 26 WATSON G M AND WITTS L J. Intestinal macrocytic anemia. Brit M J 1 13 1952
- 27 LIGHTMAN H GINSBERG V AND WATSON J. Therapeutic effect of aureomycin in pernicious anemia. Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 4 584 19 0
- 28 FOY H AND KONDY A. The haematologic action of penicillin in megaloblastic anemia and its relationship to B₁₂ metabolism and the intestinal flora. Tr Roy Soc Trop Med & Hyg 48 17 19 4
- 29 GIRDWOOD R H. The megaloblastic anemias. Quart J Med 18 136
- 30 KILLANDER A. Oral treatment of pernicious anemia with vitamin B₁₂ and purified intrinsic factor. I. The value of serial estimation of the vitamin B levels of serum. Acta med scandinav 160 339 1958
- 31 HERBERT V WASSERMAN M AND SRAET T H. Unpublished case report
- 32 WAGLE S R MEHTA R AND JOHNSON B C. Vitamin B₁₂ and protein biosynthesis. V. The site of action of vitamin B₁₂ and its inhibition by a B₁₂ antagonist. Biochim et biophys acta 3 15 19 8
- 33 MULLAONKAR V G AND SREENIVASAN V. Alterations in rat serum proteins in folic acid and vitamin B₁₂ deficiencies. Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 94 44 1957
- 34 BAKER H FRANK O PASHER I HUTNER S HERBERT V AND SOBOTKA H. Substituted vitamin B₁₂ analogues. I. A microbiologic study. Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 100 605 1959
- 35 HERBERT V HOOKER R BAKER H AND WASSERMAN L R. Patients given prolonged treatment with substituted analogues of vitamin B₁₂ in an attempt to control neoplastic growth. Unpublished results
- 36 OKUDA K HELLGERS A E AND CHOW B F. Vitamin B₁₂ serum level and jejunal biopsy. Am J Clin Nutrition 4 440 1956
- 37 BAKER H ERDBERG R PASHER I AND SOBOTKA H. Study of folic acid and vit B₁₂ in blood and urine during normal pregnancy. Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 94 513 1955
- 38 BOGER W F BAYNE G M WRIGHT L D AND BECK G D. Differential

- vitamin B in the syndrome of megaloblastic anemia associated with intestinal stricture or anastomosis *Am J Med* 42 1956
- 234 KOGAN E SCHAIKRA A JANOWITZ H D AND ADLERSBERG D Malabsorption following extensive small intestinal resection including inadvertent gastro ileostomy *J Mount Sinai Hosp (New York)* 24 309 1954 Simultaneously published in Adlersberg D The Malabsorption Syndrome New York Grune & Stratton 1957
- 235 HARRISON H E HARRISON H C FOMISETT R R AND BARR D P Potassium deficiency in a case of lymphosarcoma with the sprue syndrome *Am J Med* 2 131 1947
- 236 BJERKELUND C J Symptomatic prue *Acta med scandinav* 133 130 1950
- 237 HENDRIX J P BLACK SCHAEFFER B WITHERS R W AND HANDLER P Whipple's intestinal lipodystrophy *Arch Int Med* 95 91 1950
- 238 OALNHORN S ESTREN S AND ADLERSBERG D Intestinal uptake of vitamin B in the malabsorption syndrome *J Mount Sinai Hosp (New York)* 24 297 1954 Simultaneously published in Adlersberg D The Malabsorption Syndrome New York Grune & Stratton 1957
- 239 BRUGSCH H Hypochromic anemia in chronic disorders of pancreas *Arch klin Med* 123 199 1939
- 240 KEEFER C S HUANG K K AND YANG C S Anemia associated with chronic dysentery *Arch Int Med* 4 436 1931
- 241 OKUDA K Vitamin B metabolism and thyroid hormones *Nissim Igaku* 45 331 1958
- 242 HERBERT V Studies of intrinsic factor mechanism of action Vitamin B Symposium New York Medical College April 11 1958 (in press)
- 243 GRASBECK R AND NYBERG W Inhibition of radiovitamin B absorption by ethylenediaminetetraacetate (EDTA) and its reversal by calcium ions *Scandina J Clin & Lab Invest* 10 148 1958
- 244 HENNEMAN L H BENEDICT L H TORRES A L AND DUDLEY H R Idiopathic hypercalcaemia *New England J Med* 259 80 1958
- 245 REISNER F H JR CHIBERI J L ROYALLUM C AND MORCAN M C Application of the primary tracer test (cf Schilling) as an index of vitamin B₁₂ absorption *Am J Clin Nutrition* 4 134 1956
- 246 RUBIN C F Cellular communication
- 247 BRANTE C AND LERNBERG E The in vitro uptake of vitamin B₁₂ by *Diphyllobothrium latum* and its blockade by intrinsic factor *Scandina J Clin & Lab Invest* 9 313 1957
- 248 NYBERG W The absorption of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ in jejunal infusions with the fish tapeworm *Diphyllobothrium latum* *In Henrich H C Vitamin B and Intrinsic Factor* Stuttgart Ferdinand Enke 1957
- 249 BRANTE C AND LERNBERG E The mechanism of pernicious tapeworm anemia studied with C¹⁴ labeled vitamin B₁₂ *Acta med scandinav* 160 11 1958
- 250 VON BONSDOERF B Pernicious anemia induced by *Diphyllobothrium latum* in the light of recent investigations *Blood* 13 11 1958 *Acta med scandinav* 164 703 1955

- 284 MILLER A The in vitro binding of cobalt⁶⁰ labeled vitamin B₁₂ by normal and leukemic sera J Clin Invest 27 556 19 8
- 284a MILLER A AND SULLIVAN J F Some physicochemical properties of the vitamin B binding substances of normal and chronic myelogenous leukemic sera J Lab & Clin Med 53 607 1959
- 285 HERRIGAN D L AND HEINIE R W Refractory macrocytic anemia with defect in vitamin B₁₂ binding and with response to normal plasma J Lab & Clin Med 40 811 1959
- 286 BETHELL F H Pteroylglutamic acid VI (B) Requirements of man In Sebrell W H and Harris R S The Vitamins New York Academic Press 1954 vol 3
- 287 WITTS L J Recent work on B vitamins in the blood and gastrointestinal tract especially in relation to human diseases Brit M Bull 1 14 1956
- 288 CHANARIN J Blood folic acid Brit M J 1 1119 19 8
- 289 USDIN E PHILLIPS P N AND TOENIES G Multiplicity of the folic acid active factors of blood J Biol Chem 221 865 1956
- 290 DENKO C W GRUNDY W E WHEELER N C HENDERSON C R FRIEDMANN T E AND YOUNG J B The excretion of B complex vitamins by normal adults on a restricted intake Arch Biochem 11 109 1946
- 291 BLANCH F C Handbook of Food and Agriculture New York Reinhold 1955
- 292 TOEFFER E W ZOOK E G ORR M I AND RICHARDSON L R Agriculture Handbook 29 United States Department of Agriculture 19 1
- 293 SCHWEIGERT B S FOLLARD A E AND ELVEHJEM C A The folic acid content of meats and the retention of this vitamin during cooking Arch Biochem 10 107 1946
- 294 IVES M FOLLARD A E ELVEHJEM C A AND STRONG F M The nutritive value of canned foods VII Pyridoxine biotin and folic acid J Nutrition 31 347 1946
- 295 STOKSTAD E L R Pteroylglutamic acid VIII Occurrence in foods In Sebrell W H Jr and Harris R S The Vitamins New York Academic Press 1954 vol 3
- 296 COLLINS R A HARPER A E SCHREIBER M AND ELVEHJEM C A The folic acid content and vitamin B₁₂ content of the milk of various species J Nutrition 43 313 1951
- 297 ZUELZER W W Folic acid therapy in the anemias of infancy and childhood JAMA 131 7 1946
- 298 — AND OGDEN F N Megaloblastic anemia in infancy a common syndrome responding specifically to folic acid therapy AMA Am J Dis Child 71 11 1946
- 299 LUBBY A L AND WHEELER W E Megaloblastic anemia of infancy II Failure of response to vitamin B₁₂ and the metabolic role of folic acid and vitamin C Ohio State University Health Center J 31 1949
- 299a — Megaloblastic anemia in infancy III Clinical considerations and analysis J Pediat 54 617 1959

- serum vitamin B concentrations in mothers and infants *New England J Med* 256 1090 1957
- 269 PRYSTOWSKY H HELLEGERS A E RANKE E RANKE B AND CHOW B F Further observations on the metabolism of vitamin B₁₂ in human pregnancy *Am J Obst & Gynec* 71 1 1959
- 269a BAKER H ZIEFFER H PASHER I AND SOBOTKA H A comparison of maternal and foetal folic acid and vitamin B₁₂ at parturition *Brit M J* 1 918 1958
- 270 HELLEGERS A OKUDA K NESBITT R E L JR SMITH D W AND CHOW B F Vitamin B₁₂ absorption in pregnancy and in the newborn *Am J Clin Nutrition* 5 321 1957
- 271 LUNBY A L COOPERMAN J M DONNENFELD A M HERRERO J M TELLER D N AND WENIG J B Observations on transfer of vitamin B from mother to fetus and newborn *Proc Soc Pediatric Res* 28th Annual Meeting p 140 (May 6-7) 1958 *AM J Dis Child* 96 532 1958
- 272 HUNT J N AND MURRAY F A Gastric function in pregnancy *J Obst & Gynaec Brit Emp* 65 18 1958
- 273 GILES C AND SHUTTLEWORTH E M Megaloblastic anaemia of pregnancy and the puerperium *Lancet* 1341 1958
- 274 IZAK G RACHMILEWITZ M SILIN Y BERKOVICI B SADOVSKY A ARONOVITCH Y AND GROSSOWICZ N Vitamin B and iron deficiencies in anemia of pregnancy and puerperium *Arch Int Med* 99 346 1957
- 275 HEINRICH H C Die biochemischen Grundlagen der Diagnostik und Therapie der Vitamin B Mangelzustände (B₁₂ Hypo und Avitaminosen) des Menschen und der Haustiere Untersuchungen zum Vitamin B Stoffwechsel des Menschen während der Gravidität und Lactation *Klin Wchnschr* 3 205 1954
- 276 CALLENDER S T E A critical review of pernicious anemia of pregnancy *Quart J Med* 13 15 1944
- 277 DAS GUPTA C R CHATTERJEA J B AND BASU P Vitamin B in macrocytic anemia in pregnancy *Indian M Gaz* 88 102 1953 *Indian J M Res* 42 411 1954
- 278 ISRAELS M C G AND DA CUNHA F A L Megaloblastic anaemia of pregnancy *Lancet* 2 214 1952
- 279 BADENOCH J CALLENDER S F EVANS J R TURNBULL A L AND WITTS L J Megaloblastic anaemia of pregnancy and the puerperium *Brit M J* 1 1945 1955
- 280 MOLLIN D L AND ROSS C I M Vitamin B deficiency in the megaloblastic anaemias *Proc Roy Soc Med* 41 428 1954
- 281 LOWENSTEIN L PICK C AND PHILPOTT M Megaloblastic anemia of pregnancy and the puerperium *Am J Obst & Gynec* 0 1309 1955
- 282 PITNEY W R BEARD M F AND VAN LOON E J Observations on the bound form of vitamin B₁₂ in human serum *J Biol Chem* 0 143 1954
- 283 MENDELSON R S WATMAN D M HORRETT A P AND FAHEY J L Identification of the vitamin B₁₂ binding protein in the serum of normal and of patients with chronic myelocytic leukemia *Blood* 13 140 1958

- 30 KILLANDER A Megaloblastic anemia associated with pregnancy or puerperium Report of three cases with normal serum vitamin B₁₂ levels and subsequent response to treatment with vitamin B₁₂ *Acta haemat* 19 J 1958
- 321 SCOTT J M Therapy in the megaloblastic anemias of pregnancy *Obst & Gynec Surv* 10 510 1955
- 322 MOORE C V WILTER R MINNICH V A D SPIES T D Nutritional macrocytic anemia in patients with pellagra or deficiency of the vitamin B complex *J Lab & Clin Med* 29 127b 1944
- 323 FOX H AND KONDI A Treatment of megaloblastic anaemias Relation of penicillin to vitamin B₁₂ *Lancet* 2 360 1953
- 324 ADAMS E B Treatment of megaloblastic anaemia of pregnancy and the puerperium with vitamin B *Brit M J* 2 398 1956
- 325 WILTER C F SPIES T D AND KOCH M B Further studies on folic acid in the treatment of macrocytic anemia *South M J* 38 81 1945
- 326 GOODALL J W O GOODALL H I AND BANNERJEE D Folic acid in nutritional anaemia *Lancet* 1 90 1948
- 327 RAMALINGASWAMI V AND MENON P S Folic acid in nutritional macrocytic anaemia *Indian J M Res* 3 41 1949
- 328 SPIES T D DREIZIN S PARRER G S AND SILBERMAN D J Detection and treatment of nutritive failure in children Recent observations *JAMA* 148 1316 1952
- 329 TASKER P W G Correlation of serum vitamin B₁₂ levels and urinary folic acid in nutritional megaloblastic anaemia *Lancet* 2 61 195
- 330 DAS GUPTA C R CHATTERJEE J B GHOSH S K AND BANNERJEE D K Vitamin B₁₂ concentration of serum in nutritional megaloblastic anaemia *Bull Calcutta Sch Trop Med* 3 101 1956
- 330a RUBIN C L BRANDFORD L L IHELLIS P C AND TAYLOR H C JR Studies of celiac disease I The apparent identical and specific nature of the duodenal and proximal jejunal lesion in celiac disease and idiopathic sprue *Gastroenterology* To be published
- 331 SPIES T D SUAREZ R M SUAREZ R M JR AND MORALES HERNANDEZ F The therapeutic effect of folic acid in tropical sprue *Science* 104 15 1946
- 332 DARBY W J JONES E AND JOHNSON H C The use of synthetic L casein factor in the treatment of sprue *Science* 103 108 1946
- 333 SPIES T D LOPEZ G G MENENDEZ A MINNICH V AND KOCH M The effect of folic acid on sprue *South M J* 39 0 1946
- 334 MANSON BAIH 1 E C AND CLARKE O Folic acid in tropical sprue *Lancet* 903 1946
- 335 MORRISON R J G AND ST JOHN O C R Treatment of tropical sprue with folic acid *Lancet* 1 636 1946
- 336 GIRDWOOD R H A folic acid excretion test in the investigation of intestinal malabsorption *Lancet* 65 53 1953
- 337 ANDERSON D H AND DI SANT'AGNESE F A The celiac syndrome *In* McQuarrie I and Kelley A C Ed *Brenneman's Practice of Pediatrics* Hagerstown Md W F Prior 19 3 vol 1 chap 29

- 300 GASSER C Isolierung bei perniciosiformer Zeigermilch Anämie Helvet paediat acta 3 301 1948
- 301 BRAESTRUP P W C Vitaminstudier hos spedborn Dissert Copenhagen Haase & Son 1939
- 302 MONTO R W KAVANAUGH D AND REBUCK J W Severe nutritional macrocytic anemia in emotionally disturbed patients Am J Clin Nutrition 6 103 1958
- 303 WALT F HOLMAN S AND HENDRICKSE R G Megaloblastic anaemia of infancy in kwashiorkor and other disease Brit M J 1 1199 1956
- 304 CHANARIN I MOLLIN D L AND ANDERSON B B Folic acid deficiency and the megaloblastic anaemias Proc Roy Soc Med 51 157 1958
- 305 LIEN KENG K AND ODANG O Megaloblastic anemia in infancy and childhood in Djakarta A M A Am J Dis Child 91 909 1959
- 306 STURGEON P AND CARIENTER G Megaloblastic anemia of infancy Response to vitamin B Blood 5 458 1950
- 307 GELIN G AND IBORRA M Les Anémies Megaloblastiques de l'enfance et les Problèmes de la Mégalo-blastose Paris Masson 1955
- 308 GERBASI M L anemia megaloblastique du nourrisson Rev port pediat puer 21 1 1958
- 309 BETHELL F H Pteroylglutamic acid IX (C) Effects of deficiency in man In Seabell W H and Harris R S The Vitamins New York Academic Press 1954 vol 3
- 310 KOTHARI B V AND BHENDE Y M Nutritional megaloblastic anaemia Indian J M Res 3/ 34/ 1949
- 311 UNGLEY C C The pathogenesis of megaloblastic anaemias and the value of vitamin B Brit J Nutrition 6 99 1952
- 312 GIRDWOOD R H Some aspects of disordered folic acid metabolism in man In Wolstenholme C E W and Cameron M I Ciba Foundation Symposium on Chemistry and Biology of Heterocycles London J & A Churchill 1954
- 313 CHANAKIN I ANDERSON B B AND MOLLIN D L The absorption of folic acid Brit J Haemat 1 156 1958
- 314 COHEN I Post partum megaloblastic anemia South African M J 2/ 69/ 1953
- 315a LOWENSTEIN L Vitamin B in pregnancy and the puerperium Am J Clin Nutrition (in press)
- 316 BERRY C G Anaemia of pregnancy in Africans of Lagos Brit M J 1 819 1955
- 317 CHAUDHURI S Vitamin B in megaloblastic anaemia of pregnancy and tropical nutritional macrocytic anaemia Brit M J 2 82 1951
- 318 IATEL J C AND KECHEE B R Vitamin B in macrocytic anemia of pregnancy and the puerperium Brit M J 1 901 1950
- 319 VAN BUGHEN I S P AND NIEWIG H O Anaemia in pregnancy Lancet 1 153 1959
- 320 VILTER R W Treatment of macrocytic anemia Arch Int Med 95 18 1955
- 321 MOORE H C LILLIE E W AND GATESBY P B B The response of megaloblastic anemia of pregnancy to vitamin B₁₂ Irish J M S 6 106 1955

- 320 KILLANDER A. Megaloblastic anemia associated with pregnancy or puerperium. Report of three cases with normal serum vitamin B₁₂ levels and subsequent response to treatment with vitamin B₁₂. *Acta haemat* 19 J 1958
- 321 SCOTT J. M. Therapy in the megaloblastic anemias of pregnancy. *Obst & Gynec Surv* 10 310 1955
- 322 MOORE C. V. VILTER R. MINNICH V. AND SPIES T. D. Nutritional macrocytic anemia in patients with pellagra or deficiency of the vitamin B complex. *J Lab & Clin Med* 9 126 1944
- 323 FOX H. AND KONDY A. Treatment of megaloblastic anaemia. Relation of penicillin to vitamin B₁₂. *Lancet* 2 360 1953
- 324 ADAMS E. B. Treatment of megaloblastic anaemia of pregnancy and the puerperium with vitamin B₁₂. *Brit M J* 338 19 6
- 325 VILTER C. F. SPIES T. D. AND KOCH M. B. Further studies on folic acid in the treatment of macrocytic anemia. *South M J* 38 81 1945
- 326 GOODALL J. W. O. GOODALL H. I. AND BANNERJEE D. Folic acid in nutritional anaemia. *Lancet* 1 20 1948
- 327 RAMALINGASWAMI V. AND MENON P. S. Folic acid in nutritional macrocytic anaemia. *Indian J M Res* 3 41 1949
- 328 SPIES T. D. DREIZEN S. PARKER G. S. AND SILBERMAN D. J. Detection and treatment of nutritive failure in children. Recent observation. *J A M A* 148 13 6 1952
- 329 TASKER P. W. G. Correlation of serum vitamin B₁₂ level and urinary folic acid in nutritional megaloblastic anaemia. *Lancet* 61 19 5
- 330 DAS GUPTA C. R. CHATTERJEE J. B. GHOSH S. K. AND BANNERJEE D. K. Vitamin B₁₂ concentration of serum in nutritional megaloblastic anaemia. *Bull Calcutta Sch Trop Med* 3 101 19 6
- 330a RUBIN C. E. BRANDBORE I. L. HELPS P. C. AND TAYLOR H. C. JR. Studies of celiac disease. I. The apparent identical and specific nature of the duodenal and proximal jejunal lesion in celiac disease and idiopathic sprue. *Gastroenterology*. To be published
- 331 SPIES T. D. SUAREZ R. M. SUAREZ R. M. JR. AND MORALES HERNANDEZ F. The therapeutic effect of folic acid in tropical sprue. *Science* 104 5 1947
- 332 DARBY W. J. JONES E. AND JOHNSON H. C. The use of synthetic L. casei factor in the treatment of sprue. *Science* 103 108 1946
- 333 SPIES T. D. LOPEZ G. G. MENENDEZ A. MINNICH V. AND KOCH M. The effect of folic acid on sprue. *South M J* 39 0 1946
- 334 MANSON BAHR P. E. C. AND CLARKE O. Folic acid in tropical prue. *Lancet* 2 903 1946
- 335 MORRISON R. J. G. AND ST. JOHNSON C. R. Treatment of tropical prue with folic acid. *Lancet* 1 636 1947
- 336 GIRDWOOD R. H. A folic acid excretion test in the investigation of intestinal malabsorption. *Lancet* 65 53 19 3
- 337 ANDERSON D. H. AND DI SANT'AGNELE P. V. The celiac syndrome. In *McQuarrie I. and Kelley A. C. Eds. Breuneman's Practice of Pediatrics*. Hagerstown Md. W. F. Prior 1953. vol 1 chap 29

- 338 DI SANT AGNESE P A Idiopathic celiac disease II Course and prognosis
Pediatrics 11 294 1953
- 339 THOMPSON L Folic acid therapy in coeliac disease *Brit M J* 1 997 1948
- 340 ISRAELS M C G AND SHARE J Idiopathic steatorrhea (non tropical sprue)
with megaloblastic anemia *Lancet* 1 752 1950
- 341 FAVORITE G O The treatment of macrocytic anemia with synthetic L casei
factor (folic acid) a case report *Pennsylvania M J* 49 855 1946
- 342 ZUMOFF B Possible relationship of folic acid to uric acid metabolism as
exemplified by a case of non tropical sprue *Am J M Sc* 225 674 1953
- 343 COHEN B S MEYER L M AND FADEN R Sprue refractory to vitamin B
satisfactory response to folic acid *Ann Int Med* 36 1533 1952
- 344 DAVIDSON L S P Pteroylglutamic acid (folic acid) Therapeutic indications
and limitations *Edinburgh M J* 55 400 1948
- 345 — GIRDWOOD R H AND INNES E M Folic acid in the treatment of the
sprue syndrome *Lancet* 2 511 1947
- 346 FOX H J A comparison of pteroylglutamic acid and liver extract main-
tenance therapy in sprue *New England J Med* 240 801 1949
- 347 WEIR J F AND COMFORT M W Folic acid therapy in non tropical sprue
Results of treatment in seven cases *J Lab & Clin Med* 3 1231 1947
- 348 ADLERSBERG D AND SCHEIN J Clinical and pathologic studies in sprue
JAMA 134 1459 1947
- 349 THIERSCH J B AND PHILLIPS F S Effects of 4 amino pteroylglutamic acid
in dogs with special reference to megaloblastosis *Proc Soc Exper Biol &
Med* 71 484 1949
- 350 NICHOL C A AND WELCH A D On the mechanism of action of Ami-
nopterin *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 74 403 1950
- 351 BROQUIST H P STOKSTAD E I R AND JUKES T H Some biological and
chemical properties of the citrovorum factor *J Biol Chem* 185 399 1950
- 352 BADENOCH J The use of labelled vitamin B and gastric biopsy in the
investigation of anaemia *Proc Roy Soc Med* 47 46 1952
- 353 HAWKINS C F AND MEYNELL M J Macrocytosis and macrocytic anemia
caused by anticonvulsant drugs *Quart J Med* 145 1958
- 354 BERYNE N LEVINE M AND MCGILVER A Megaloblastic anemia follow-
ing anticonvulsants *Brit M J* 1 1247 1959
- 355 CHALMERS J N M AND BOHFFIMER K Megaloblastic anemia and anticon-
vulsant therapy *Lancet* 2 320 1954
- 356 HAWKINS C F AND MEYNELL M J Megaloblastic anemia due to phenytoin
sodium *Lancet* 2 737 1954
- 357 RHIND E G AND VARADI S Megaloblastic anemia due to phenytoin sodium
Lancet 2 921 1954
- 358 FULD H Megaloblastic anaemia following anticonvulsants *Brit M J* 1 1145
1955
- 359 GIRDWOOD R H AND LENMAN J A R Megaloblastic anaemia occurring
during primidone therapy *Brit M J* 1 146 1956
- 360 NEWMAN M J D AND SLINGER D W Megaloblastic anemia following the
use of primidone *Blood* 7 183 1957

- 61 CALVERT R J HURWORTH E AND MACBEAN A L Megaloblastic anemia from methophenobarbital *Blood* 13 894 1958
- 62 HORSON Q J G SELWYN J G AND MOLLIN D L Megaloblastic anaemia due to barbiturates *Lancet* 271 1049 1956
- 363 CHRISTENSON W N ULTMANN J E AND ROSEMAN D M Megaloblastic anemia during primidone (mysoline) therapy *JAMA* 163 940 1951
- 364 WEBSTER J M Megaloblastic anaemia due to phenytoin sodium *Lancet* 2 1017 1954
- 365 CHANARIN I ELMES P C AND MOLLIN D L Folic acid studies in megaloblastic anaemia due to primidone *Brit M J* 2 80 1958
- 366 FALCO E A GOODWIN L G HITCHINGS G H ROLLO I M AND RUSSELL P B 2,4-diaminopyrimidines a new series of antimalarials *Brit J Pharmacol* 6 185 1951
- 367 MYATT A V HERNANDEZ T AND COATNEY C R Studies in human malaria XXXIII The toxicity of pyrimethamine (daraprim) in man *Am J Trop Med* 188 1953
- 368 TABIE J LAPORTE J MONNIER J RIBET A BERNADET AND DAVÈRE Anémie avec mégalo blastose médullaire au cours d'un traitement par la pyriméthamine (malocide) *Bull et mem Soc méd hop Paris* 490 1958
- 369 HITCHINGS G H ELION G B AND SINGER S Derivatives of condensed pyrimidine systems as antimetabolites I: Wolstenholme G E M and Cameron M P Ciba Foundation Symposium on Chemistry and Biology of Pteridines Boston Little Brown & Co 1954
- 370 — Daraprim as an antagonist of folic and folinic acid *Tr Roy Soc Trop Med & Hyg* 46 467 1952
- 371 WOOLLEY D W Antimetabolites *Science* 196 15 1959
- 372 SPRAY G H AND WITTS L J Results of three years' experience with microbiologic assay of vitamin B₁₂ in serum *Brit M J* 1 235 1958
- 373 NICHOL G A AND WELCH A D Synthesis of citrovorum factor from folic acid by liver slice: augmentation by ascorbic acid *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 74 50 1950
- 374 BROQUIST H P STICKSTAD F L R AND JONES T H Biochemical studies with the citrovorum factor *J Lab & Clin Med* 58 9 1951
- 375 McMILLAN R B AND INGLIS J C Scurvy: a survey of fifty three cases *Brit M J* 2 233 1944
- 376 BRONTE STEWART B The anaemia of adult scurvy *Quart J Med* 2 309 1953
- 377 BROWN A Megaloblastic anaemia associated with adult scurvy: report of a case which responded to synthetic ascorbic acid alone *Brit J Haemat* 1 345 1955
- 378 — The anaemia of scurvy *Glasgow M J* 3 95 1951
- 379 METTIER S R MINOT G R AND TOWNSEND W C Scurvy in adults especially the effect of food rich in vitamin C on blood formation *JAMA* 95 1089 1930

- 338 DI SANT'AGNESE I. A. Idiopathic celiac disease. II. Course and prognosis. *Pediatrics* 11: 224, 1953.
- 339 THOMPSON L. Folic acid therapy in coeliac disease. *Brit. M. J.* 1: 29, 1948.
- 340 ISRAELS M. C. C. AND SHARP J. Idiopathic steatorrhea (non tropical sprue) with megaloblastic anemia. *Lancet* 1: 2, 1950.
- 341 FAVORITE C. O. The treatment of macrocytic anemia with synthetic L. casei factor (folic acid): a case report. *Pennsylvania M. J.* 49: 855, 1946.
- 342 ZIMMER B. Possible relationship of folic acid to uric acid metabolism as exemplified by a case of non tropical sprue. *Am. J. M. Sc.* 256: 4, 1953.
- 343 COHEN B. S. MEYER L. M. AND FADEN R. Sprue refractory to vitamin B: satisfactory response to folic acid. *Ann. Int. Med.* 36: 1533, 1952.
- 344 DAVIDSON L. S. P. Pteroylglutamic acid (folic acid). Therapeutic indications and limitations. *Edinburgh M. J.* 55: 400, 1948.
- 345 — GIRDWOOD R. H. AND INNES E. M. Folic acid in the treatment of the prue syndrome. *Lancet* 511, 1941.
- 346 FOX H. J. A comparison of pteroylglutamic acid and liver extract maintenance therapy in sprue. *New England J. Med.* 10: 801, 1949.
- 347 WEIR J. F. AND COMFORT M. W. Folic acid therapy in non tropical prue. Results of treatment in seven cases. *J. Lab. & Clin. Med.* 3: 1231, 1941.
- 348 ADLERSBERG D. AND SCHEIN J. Clinical and pathologic studies in prue. *J. A.M.A.* 134: 1459, 1947.
- 349 THIERSCH J. B. AND PHILLIPS F. S. Effects of 4 amino-pteroylglutamic acid in dogs with special reference to megaloblasticosis. *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 1: 484, 1949.
- 350 NICHOL C. A. AND WELCH A. D. On the mechanism of action of Aminopterin. *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 4: 403, 1950.
- 351 BROQUIST H. I. STOKSTAD E. L. R. AND JONES T. H. Some biological and chemical properties of the chlorella factor. *J. Biol. Chem.* 185: 399, 1950.
- 352 BADENOCH J. The use of labelled vitamin B₁₂ and gastric biopsy in the investigation of anaemia. *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.* 4: 46, 1952.
- 353 HAWKINS C. F. AND MEYNELL M. J. Macrocytosis and macrocytic anemia caused by anticonvulsant drugs. *Quart. J. Med.* 1: 45, 1958.
- 354 BERLYNE N. LEVINE M. AND MCGLASHER A. Megaloblastic anemia following anticonvulsants. *Brit. M. J.* 1: 124, 1955.
- 355 CHALMERS J. N. M. AND BOHEIMER K. Megaloblastic anemia and anticonvulsant therapy. *Lancet* 900, 1954.
- 356 HAWKINS C. F. AND MEYNELL M. J. Megaloblastic anemia due to phenytoin sodium. *Lancet* 2: 31, 1954.
- 357 RHIND E. G. AND VARADI S. Megaloblastic anemia due to phenytoin sodium. *Lancet* 951, 1954.
- 358 FULD H. Megaloblastic anaemia following anticonvulsants. *Brit. M. J.* 1: 145, 1955.
- 359 GIRDWOOD R. H. AND LENMAN J. A. R. Megaloblastic anaemia occurring during primidone therapy. *Brit. M. J.* 1: 116, 1956.
- 360 NEWMAN M. J. D. AND SILVER D. W. Megaloblastic anemia following the use of primidone. *Blood* 1: 183, 1957.

- erythrocyte In BEAN W B Ed Monographs in Medicine Series I Baltimore Williams and Wilkins 1952
- 401b HUGGLEY C M JR, BAIN J A, RIVERS S L AND SCOGGINS R B Refractory megaloblastic anemia associated with excretion of orotic acid *Blood* 14 615 1959
- 40 WATSON C J Megalocytic anemia *Illinois M J* 9 19 1942
- 403 DAMESHEK W AND INCALL M Agranulocytosis (malignant neutropenia) report of 9 cases 2 with recovery *Am J M Sc* 181 507 1931
- 404 CONLEY C L, GREEN T W, HARTMAN R C AND KREVANS J R Prolonged treatment of pernicious anemia with vitamin B₁₂ *Am J Med* 13 984 1952
- 405 TEIFKA T AND BRAUN B Mechanism of increased hemolysis in pernicious anemia and autohemolytic action of liver *Diet Folia haemat* 48 3 1932
- 402a CHEVALLIER P, BERNARD J, BILSKI LASQUIER G AND CHRISTOL D La tuberculose aiguë pseudoleucémique *Semaine Hop Paris* 30 114 1954
- 406 KASIRSKY I A Die Funktion des Knochenmarkes und die Blutbildung bei der visceralen Kinderleukämie *Diet Folia haemat* 51 352 1934
- 407 ROHR K Knochenmark morphologie des Menschlichen Sternalpunktats Berlin Urban & Schwartzberg 1937
- 408 KOSZLEWSKI B J The occurrence of megaloblastic erythropoiesis in patients with hemochromatosis *Blood* 1 118 1952
- 409 GILLIAN T Cell enzymes and iron metabolism in anemias and siderosis *Nutrit Rev* 16 3 3 1958
- 410 GRJELUND S Megaloblastic hemolytic anemia *Acta med scandinav* (suppl 2 9) 138 101 1950
- 411 DEVIRO P AND LEONARDI C Hemipathic mediterranean syndrome *Acta med scandinav* 138 362 1950
- 412 GERIOLA F Hemolytic splenomegaly associated with perniciousform anemia *Inform Med Genova* 3 17 1949
- 413 JANDL J H AND GREENBERG M S Bone marrow failure due to relative nutritional deficiency in Cooley's hemolytic anemia *New England J Med* 60 461 1959
- 413a JOHNSON U, ROATH O S AND KIRKPATRICK C I F Nutritional megaloblastic anemia associated with sickle cell states *Blood* 14 535 1959
- 414 GRANVILLE N AND DAMESHEK W Hemochromatosis with megaloblastic anemia responding to folic acid *New England J Med* 58 586 1958
- 415 MAIER C Megaloblastic vitamin B deficiency anemia with hemochromatosis *Schweiz med Wchnschr* 8 1234 1957
- 416 CASTLE W B Commentary In Berson I B, Muschenheim C, Castle W B, Harrison T R, Ingelfinger F and Bondy I K The Yearbook of Medicine 1958-1959 Series Chicago The Year Book Publishers 1958
- 417 MOHLER D N AND LEAVELL B S Aplastic anemia an analysis of 50 cases *Ann Int Med* 49 376 1958
- 418 MUELLER J F AND WILL J J Interrelationship of folic acid, vitamin B₁₂ and ascorbic acid in patients with megaloblastic anemia *Am J Clin Nutr* 10 1955

- 380 CRANDON J H LUND C C AND DILL D B Experimental human scurvy
New England J Med 223 353 1910
- 381 KREBS H A IETERS R A COWARD K H WATSON I W FARSONS L C
ILLATT B S SPENCE J C AND O'BRIEN J R I Vitamin C requirement
of human adults Experimental study of vitamin C deprivation in man
Lancet 1 853 1918
- 382 ALDRICH R A AND NELSON E N Megaloblastic anemia in infants J Lancet
6/ 393 1917
- 383 MAY C D NELSON I N LOWE C U AND SALMON R J Pathogenesis of
megaloblastic anemia in infancy interrelationship between pteroylglutamic
acid and ascorbic acid AMA Am J Dis Child 80 191 1950
- 384 DAVIS L J AND BROWN A The Megaloblastic Anemias Springfield Ill
Charles C Thomas 1953
- 385 EHRLICH I AND FAZARUS A Histology of the Blood Cambridge University
Press 1960
- 386 VAUGHN J M Leuko erythroblastic anemia J Path & Bact 4 541 1906
- 387 WILSON I E Bone marrow in anemia M J Australia 1513 1912
- 388 BAEZ VILLASENOR J AND SANCHEZ MEDAL L Case report a case of erythemic
myelosis (Di Guglielmo) Blood 9 1137 1953
- 389 DAMESHEK W AND CUNZ I Leukemia New York Grune & Stratton 1958
- 390 BALDINI M EUDENBERG H IUKUTAKE K AND DAMESHEK W The anemia
of the Di Guglielmo syndrome Blood 17 331 1959
- 391 FARAL A Liver resistant pernicious anemia with megaloblastosis of bone
marrow terminating in acute leukemia Rev hemat 4 65 1949
- 392 STAN C M AND DICK F W Monocytic leukemia Am J Med 10 98
1956
- 393 ISRAELS M C C Hemoglobinization of erythroblasts J Path & Bact 5 361
1911
- 394 LAMBIN I AND DE WILDEDT W Le probleme des megakoblastes Rev bel e
c med 10 289 1938
- 395 STONE F H Megaloblastic erythropoiesis in a case of myeloid leukemia
during treatment Glasgow M J 37 155 1950
- 396 DAMESHEK W AND BALDINI M The Di Guglielmo syndrome Blood 17 193
1958
- 397 WASSERMAN L R Personal communication supported by slides of peripheral
blood and bone marrow morphology
- 398 ISRAELS M C C AND WILKINSON J F Achiestic anaemia Quart J Med
9 163 1940
- 399 DAVIDSON L S P Refractory megaloblastic anemia Blood 3 107 1948
- 400 DACIE J V SMITH M D WHITE J C AND MOLLIN D I Refractory
normoblastic anaemia a clinical and haematological study of seven cases
Brit J Haemat 5 56 1959
- 401 ROELSON E AND OHLSEN A S Achiestic anemia completely refractory
megaloblastic anemia A case followed for nearly four years Acta med
scandinav 150 17 1954
- 401a VILTER R W AND MUELLER J F The growth and maturation of the

- 433 NEILL D W AND WEAVER J A Amino acid and protein metabolism in pernicious anemia *Brit J Haemat* 4 447 1958
- 434 FRASER M J AND HOLDSWORTH E S Vitamin B₁₂ and protein biosynthesis in chick liver *Nature* 1 519 1959
- 435 ARNSTEIN H R V AND SIMKIN J L Vitamin B₁₂ and protein biosynthesis in rat liver *Nature* 1 53 1959
- 436 NEILL D W AND WEAVER J A A study of some metabolic processes dependent on coenzyme A in pernicious anemia *Acta haemat* 1 23 1959
- 437 SMITHBURN K C AND ZERFAS L C The neural symptoms and signs in pernicious anemia *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 70 1110 1951
- 438 HYLAND H H WATTS G O AND FARQUHARSON R F Course of subacute combined degeneration of spinal cord *Canad M A J* 65 905 1951
- 439 DAVIDSON S Clinical picture of pernicious anemia prior to introduction of liver therapy in 1906 and in Edinburgh subsequent to 1944 *Brit M J* 1 41 1957
- 440 GREENFIELD J C AND CARMICHAEL E A The peripheral nerves in cases of subacute combined degeneration of the cord *Brain* 58 483 1935
- 441 VAN DER SCHEER W M AND KOEK H C Peripheral nerve lesions in cases of pernicious anemia *Acta psychiat et neurol* 13 61 1938
- 442 JEWESBURY E C C Subacute combined degeneration of the cord and achlorhydric peripheral neuropathies without anaemia *Lancet* 301 1954
- 443 CASTLE W B The anemias *In* Cecil R L and Loeb R F *A Textbook of Medicine* ed 10 Philadelphia W B Saunders 1959
- 444 UNGLEY C C Treatment with vitamin B₁₂ in haematological disorders *In* Heinrich H C *Vitamin B₁₂ and Intrinsic Factor* Stuttgart Ferdinand Enke 1957
- 445 HEATON J M MCCORMICK A J A AND FREEMAN A G Tobacco amblyopia a clinical manifestation of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency *Lancet* 7 286 1958
- 446 HAMILTON H L ELLIS P I AND SHEETS R F Visual impairment due to optic neuropathy in pernicious anemia report of a case and review of the literature *Blood* 14 348 1959
- 446a HARRIS C E C Snarets and delusions in the recognition of pernicious anemia *Connecticut Med J* 12 443 1958
- 447 VICTOR M AND LEAR A A Subacute combined degeneration of the spinal cord Current concepts of the disease process Value of serum vitamin B₁₂ determinations in clarifying some of the common clinical problems *Am J Med* 25 96 1958
- 448 WOLTMAN H W AND HECK E J Funicular degeneration of spinal cord without pernicious anemia neurologic aspects of sprue nontropical sprue and idiopathic steatorrhea *Arch Int Med* 60 992 1951
- 449 ARIAS I M APT L AND ILLYGOVE M Absorption of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ in nonanemic patients with combined system disease *New England J Med* 253 1005 1955
- 450 ELLENBOGEN L WILLIAMS W L RABINER S F AND LIGHTMAN H C An

- 418a ARROWSMITH W R BURRIS M B AND SICALOFF A Induction of megaloblastic marrow by administration of cortisone in aplastic anemia with subsequent response to vitamin B₁₂ relationship not previously described *J Lab & Clin Med* 42 118 1953
- 419 CLUSTER R I An Atlas of the Blood and Bone Marrow Philadelphia Saunders 1949
- 419a WEISSBACH H LOOHEY J AND BARKER H A Isolates and properties of B₁₂ coenzymes containing benzimidazole or dimethylbenzimidazole *Proc Nat Acad Sc* 45 221 1959
- 420 RICHMOND J AND DAVIDSON S Subacute combined degeneration of the spinal cord in non addisonian megaloblastic anaemia *Quart J Med* 27 517 1958
- 421 SUAREZ R M Sprue *In Cecil R L and Loeb R F A Textbook of Medicine* ed 9 Philadelphia W B Saunders 1955
- 422 NIEWIC H O VAN BUCHEM F S I AND KROESE W F Vitamin B₁₂ and pteroylglutamic acid in the treatment of megaloblastic anemias *Acta med scandinav* 147 45 1952
- 423 — TABER J C DE VRIES J A AND KROESE W F S The relationship of vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid in megaloblastic anemias *J Lab & Clin Med* 44 118 1954
- 424 BODIAN D Nucleic acid in nerve cell regeneration *Symp Soc Exper Biol* 1 163 194
- 425 ALEXANDER W F Pathomorphology of the nervous system in vitamin B₁₂ deficiency *In Heinrich H C Vitamin B₁₂ und Intrinsic Factor* Stuttgart Ferdinand Enke 1957
- 426 ZIRM K L Über die spezifische Anreicherung von Kobaltchlorophyllin im Nervensystem ihre therapeutische Bedeutung und Beziehung zum Vitamin B₁₂ *In Heinrich H C Vitamin B₁₂ und Intrinsic Factor* Stuttgart Ferdinand Enke 1957
- 427 CASPERSSON T O Cell Growth and Cell Function New York W W Norton 1950
- 428 STERN J R TAYLOR M W AND RUSSET W C Relation of vitamin B₁₂ to liver haemophilia *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 60 221 1949
- 429 BAUER H AND HEINRICH H C Pathophysiologische Voraussetzungen zur therapeutischen Anwendung des Vitamin B₁₂ bei neurologischen Erkrankungen *In Heinrich H C Vitamin B₁₂ und Intrinsic Factor* Stuttgart Ferdinand Enke 1957
- 430 PRUSOFF W H TEPLA L J AND KING C C The influence of pteroylglutamic acid on nucleic acid synthesis in *Lactobacillus casei* *J Biol Chem* 176 1309 1948
- 431 HOBSON A Z Compounds with folic acid activity *Arch Biochem* 1 339 1949
- 432 WACLE S R MEHTA R AND JOHNSON B C Vitamin B₁₂ and protein biosynthesis VI Relation of vitamin B₁₂ to amino acid activation *J Biol Chem* 233 619 1958

- 464 ——— Leberkrankung und perniziöse Anämie *Blut* 4 261 1938
- 465 STEVENSON T D AND BEARD M F Serum vitamin B₁₂ content in liver disease *New England J Med* 260 206 1959
- 465a DE GRUCHY G C Clinical Haematology in Medical Practice Springfield Ill C C Thomas 1958
- 466 CAMERON D G PENSLEY E H AND WOOD I Latent steatorrhea *Ann Int Med* 3 553 1952
- 467 JURGENSEN J L SCHOLZ D A AND WOLLAECER E L Severe osteomalacia associated with occult steatorrhea due to non tropical prue *Arch Int Med* 98 114 1956
- 468 STURGIS C C AND ISAACS R Pernicious anemia *In* Downey H Handbook of Hematology New York Paul B Hoeber 1938 vol 4
- 468a MARSHALL R A AND JANDL J H Diagnostic use of small doses of folic acid in megaloblastic anemias *Clinical Research* 1 206 1959
- 468b MCKELLAR M Investigation of megaloblastic anemias *New Zealand J Med* 58 18 1959
- 469 HAM T H A Syllabus of Laboratory Examinations in Clinical Diagnosis Cambridge Harvard University Press 1952
- 470 BLOOMFIELD A L AND POLLARD W S Gastric Acidity New York Macmillan 1933
- 471 SEGAL H L MILLER L L AND MORTON J J Determination of gastric acidity without intubation by use of cation exchange indicator compounds *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 119 18 1950
- 472 RECHTSCHAFFEN J S VENET L AND WEINGARTEN M Gastric acidity determination procedures Comparison of a tubeless method with azure A resin compound and an intubation method with histamine *JAMA* 167 1461 1951
- 473 BOLT R J OSBORN T G AND LILLARD H M A clinical evaluation of tubeless gastric analysis *Gastroenterology* 3 31 1957
- 474 DENBOROUGH M A RETIEF F P AND WITTS L J Tubeless gastric analysis *Brit M J* 11 13 1958
- 475 HERBERT V Development of a possible in vitro assay for intrinsic factor *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 9 608 1958
- 476 ——— CASTRO Z AND WASSERMAN L R Rapid in vitro assay of intrinsic factor in human gastric juice *Clinical Research* 1 9 1959
- 477 CRASBECK R Studies on the vitamin B₁₂ binding principle and other biocolloids of human gastric juice *Acta med scand n v suppl* 314 1956
- 478 BERTCHER R W MEYER L M AND MILLER I F Capacity of normal human saliva for vitamin B₁₂ binding *Soc Exper Biol & Med* 99 113 1958
- 479 OKUDA K CRASBECK R AND CHOI B F Bile and vitamin B₁₂ absorption *J Lab & Clin Med* 51 17 1958
- 480 CRASBECK R NYBERG W AND REIZENSTEIN I Biliary and fecal vitamin B₁₂ excretion in man An isotope study *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 91 180 1958

improved urinary excretion test as an assay for intrinsic factor *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 39 357 1950

- 451 SCHULZINE R I Intrinsic factor studies II The effect of gastric juice on the urinary excretion of radioactivity after the oral administration of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ *J Lab & Clin Med* 47 810 1953
- 452 ROSS G I M Vitamin B₁₂ assay in body fluids using *Euglena gracilis* *J Clin Path* 5 250 1952
- 453 STRAY G H An improved method for the rapid estimation of vitamin B₁₂ in serum *Clin Sci* 11 661 1950
- 454 BOSSAK E F WANG C I AND ADLERSBERG D Clinical aspects of the malabsorption syndrome (idiopathic prue) Observations in 94 patients *J Mount Sinai Hosp (New York)* 42 1357 Simultaneously published in Adlersberg D The Malabsorption Syndrome New York Crane & Stratton 1957
- 455 BETHELL I H AND HARRINGTON B D Incidence and significance of disease of gall bladder and liver in pernicious anemia *Am J Digest Dis & Nutrition* 1 256 1954
- 456 BROWN M R The pathology of the gastrointestinal tract in pernicious anemia and subacute combined degeneration of the spinal cord *New England J Med* 270 473 1954
- 457 BOYLEN L A AND LAYNE J A The gall bladder in patients with pernicious anemia a study of non visualization and rate of emptying *Gastroenterology* 4 121 1945
- 458 SINGER K KING J C AND ROBIN S The life span of the megalocyte and the hemolytic syndrome of pernicious anemia *J Lab & Clin Med* 3 1068 1948
- 459 HAMILTON H I DECONIN E L SHEETS R F JANNEY C D AND ELLIS J A Studies with unagglutinable erythrocyte counts VI Accelerated destruction of normal adult erythrocytes in pernicious anemia contribution of hemolysis to the oligocythemia *J Clin Invest* 33 191 1954
- 460 LONDON I M AND WEST R The formation of bile pigment in pernicious anemia *J Biol Chem* 154 33 1950
- 460a HOLLYCOVE M Bone marrow hemolysis in anemia *J Clin Invest* 38 1031 1959
- 461 INGELFINGER F J Diseases of the gallbladder and bile ducts *In* Harrison T R Adams R D Bennett I L Jr Resnik W H Thorn C W and Wintrobe M M Principles of Internal Medicine New York McGraw Hill 1958
- 461a WATSON C J Cholelithiasis Cholecystitis *In* CECIL R L AND LOEB R F Eds A Textbook of Medicine tenth ed Philadelphia W B Saunders 1959
- 462 SCHILLING R F AND HARRIS J W Liver function in untreated Addisonian pernicious anemia *J Lab Clin Med* 40 718 1950
- 462a TALBOTT J H Gout and blood dyscrasias *Medicine* 38 13 1959
- 463 REIMANN F Leberkrankung und perniziose Anämie *In* Heinrich H C Vitamin B₁₂ und Intrinsic Factor Stuttgart Ferdinand Enke 1950

plasma of folic acid injected intravenously in normal subjects and patients with megaloblastic anaemia *Brit J Haemat* 4 435 1958

- 438 COX, E V MEYNELL M J COOKE W T AND GADDIE R The folic acid excretion test in the steatorrhea syndrome *Gastroenterology* 35 390 1958
- 499 BOREK B A AND WAELSCH H The enzymatic degradation of histidine *J Biol Chem* 195 49 1953
- 500 TABOR H AND MEHLER A H Isolation of N formyl L glutamic acid as an intermediate in the enzymatic degradation of L histidine *J Biol Chem* 191 559 1954
- 501 SILVERMAN M GARDINER, R C AND BAKERMAN H A The nature of glutamic acid excreted in folic acid deficiency *J Biol Chem* 194 81 1952
- 502 TABOR H SILVERMAN M MEHLER A H DAFT F S AND BAUER H L histidine conversion to a urinary glutamic acid derivative in folic deficient rats *J Am Chem Soc* 75 156 1953
- 503 DAFT F S Certain aspects of the relations between nutrition and liver function *In* Brauer R *Liver Function A Symposium on Approaches to the Quantitative Description of Liver Function* Publication #4 Washington: D C American Institute of Biological Sciences 1958
- 504 BROQUIST H P Evidence for the excretion of formiminoglutamic acid following folic acid antagonist therapy in acute leukemia *J Am Chem Soc* 78 6205 1956
- 505 LUNBY A I Observations on the excretion of formiminoglutamic acid in folic acid deficiency in man *Clinical Research Proceedings* 5 8 1957
- 506 TABOR, H AND WINGARDEN L A method for the determination of formiminoglutamic acid in urine *J Clin Invest* 37 894 1958
- 507 HIATT H H COLISTEIN M AND TABOR H Urinary excretion of formiminoglutamic acid by human subjects after antifolic acid therapy *J Clin Invest* 38 919 1958
- 508 LUNBY A L COOPERMAN J M TELLER D N AND DONNELLY A M Excretion of formiminoglutamic acid in folic acid deficiency states *J Clin Invest* 37 915 1958
- 509 SILVERMAN M GARDINER R C AND CONBIT P T A method for the detection of N formiminoglutamic acid in urine *J Nat Cancer Inst* 10 1 1958
- 510 BROQUIST H P AND LUNBY A L Detection and isolation of formiminoglutamic acid from urine in folic acid deficiency in humans *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 100 349 1959
- 511 LUNBY A L COOPERMAN J M AND TELLER D N Urinary excretion of formiminoglutamic acid Application in diagnosis of clinical folic acid deficiency *Am J Clin Nutrition* 7 397 1959
- 512 HERBERT V BAKER H FRANK O FASHER I WASSERMAN L R AND SOBOTKA H Unpublished data
- 513 SILVERMAN M AND PITNEY A J Dietary methionine and the excretion of formiminoglutamic acid by the rat *J Biol Chem* 231 119 1958

- 481 MILLER O N Studies on an interaction among serum protein materials containing intrinsic factor and vitamin B Arch Biochem 78 1957
- 482 — AND UNGLICH W G A study of etiology of macrocytic anemia J Clin Invest 36 915 1957
- 483 HUTNER S H CURRY A AND BAKER H Microbiological assays Analyst Chem 30 811 1958
- 484 COATES M E AND LORD J F Methods of measurement of vitamin B Biochem Soc Symp 23 96 1955
- 485 MOLLIN D L AND RESS C I M The pathophysiology of vitamin B deficiency in the megaloblastic anemias In Heinrich H C Vitamin B and Intrinsic Factor Stuttgart Ferdinand Enke 1957
- 486 LOWENSTEIN I Personal communication
- 486 SOBOTKA H BAKER H AND ZIFFER H Vitamin B₁₂ distribution between plasma and cells Vitamin B₁₂ Symposium New York Medical College April 11 1958 Am J Clin Nutrition (in press)
- 487 HERBERT V Discussion of reference 486 Am J Clin Nutrition (in press)
- 488 — Unpublished data
- 489 — WASSERMAN I R FRANK O LASHIER I AND BAKER H (Initio by SOBOTKA H) Value of fasting serum folic acid levels Fed Proc 18 946 1959
- 489a BAKER H HERBERT V FRANK O LASHIER I WASSERMAN I R AND SOBOTKA H A microbiologic method for detecting folic acid deficiency in man Clin Chem 5 25 1959
- 489b HERBERT V BAKER H FRANK O LASHIER I SOBOTKA H AND WASSERMAN I R The measurement of folic acid activity in serum a diagnostic aid in the differentiation of the megaloblastic anemias Blood (In press)
- 490 DENKO C W Pteroylglutamic acid clearance in normal adult J Appl Physiol 3 559 1951
- 491 SPRAY C H AND WITTS L J The utilization of folic acid given by mouth Clin Sci 11 273 1952
- 492 CLARK S I JR Oral folic acid tolerance test in normal human subjects and patients with pernicious anemia Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 8 1953
- 493 DENKO C W CRUNDY W E LORTER J W BERRYMAN C H FRIEDMAN T E AND YODMANS J B The excretion of B complex vitamins in the urine and feces of eleven normal adults Arch Biochem 10 33 1946
- 494 REGISTER U D AND SARETT H I Urinary excretion of vitamin B₁₂ folic acid and citrovorum factor in human subjects on various diets Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 78 37 1951
- 495 SUAREZ R M WELCH A D HEINIE R W SUAREZ R M JR AND NELSON E N Effectiveness of conjugated forms of folic acid in the treatment of tropical sprue J Lab & Clin Med 31 1294 1946
- 496 SWENSEID M E BIRD O D BROWN R A AND BETHELL F H Metabolic function of pteroylglutamic acid and its hexaglutamyl conjugate J Lab & Clin Med 3 23 1947
- 497 CHANARIN I MOLLIN D L AND ANDERSON B B The clearance from the

- pernicious anemia to pteroylglutamic acid and vitamin B₁₂ J Lab & Clin Med 24 439 1949
- 9 WOLFF R La position du foie dans le métabolisme normal et pathologique de la vitamine B₁₂ In Heinrich H C Vitamin B₁₂ und Intrinsic Factor Stuttgart Ferdin and Enke 1957
- 10 DARBY W J Folic acid and citrovorum factor in human nutrition Nutrition Symp Series No 7 New York National Vitamin Foundation Inc 1953
- 11 UNGLAUB W G AND GOLDSMITH G A Folic acid and vitamin B₁₂ in medical practice JAMA 161 63 1956
- 12 ROSS J I BELDING H AND PALGEL B L The development and progression of subacute combined degeneration of the spinal cord in patients with pernicious anemia treated with synthetic pteroylglutamic (folic) acid Blood 3 68 1948
- 13 WRIGHT L D SKEGGS H R AND HUFF J W The ability of thymidine to replace vitamin B₁₂ as a growth factor for certain lactobacilli J Biol Chem 154 3 1948
- 14 BOK J FABER J G DE VRIES W F KROESE W F S AND NIEWIJC H O The effect of pteroylglutamic acid on the serum vitamin B₁₂ concentration in pernicious anemia in remission J Lab & Clin Med 51 66 1958
- 15 AMA COUNCIL ON FOODS AND NUTRITION Vitamin preparations as dietary supplements and as therapeutic agents JAMA 169 41 1959
- 16 MOORE C V Pernicious anemia In Conn H F Current Therapy 1959 Philadelphia W B Saunders 1959
- 17 HARRIS J W Aggravation of clinical manifestations of folic acid deficiency by small daily doses of vitamin B₁₂ Am J Med 1 461 1956
- 18 COX E V MEYNELL M J COOKE W T AND GADDIE R Folic acid and cyanocobalamin in pernicious anaemia Clin Sci 1 693 1958
- 19 NELSON R S AND DOCTOR V M The vitamin B₁₂ content of human liver as determined by bioassay of needle biopsy material Ann Int Med 49 1361 1958
- 20 CROSSOWITZ N HOCHMAN A ARONOVITCH J IZAK G AND RACHMILEWITZ M Malignant growth in the liver and serum vitamin B₁₂ levels Lancet 1 1116 1957
- 21 CONLEY C L KREVANS J R CHOW B F BURROWS C AND LANG C A Observations on the absorption, utilization and excretion of vitamin B₁₂ J Lab & Clin Med 38 84 1951
- 22 CHESTERMAN D C CUTHBERTSON W F J AND IEGLER H F Vitamin B₁₂ excretion studies Biochem J 48 11 1951
- 23 REISNER E H JR AND WEINER L The treatment of pernicious anemia with massive parenteral doses of vitamin B₁₂ Blood 8 81 1953
- 24 SOKOLOFF M S SANDEMAN E H JR AND BEARD M F Urinary excretion of vitamin B₁₂ Blood 7 43 1952
- 25 MOLLIN D L AND ROSS G I M Vitamin B₁₂ concentrations of serum and urine in the first 24 hours after intramuscular injection of the vitamin J Clin Path 6 54 1953

- 514 RABINOWITZ J AND LAROR H The urinary excretion of formic acid and formiminoglutamic acid in folic acid deficiency *J Biol Chem* 213:259 1958
- 515 HIATT H H RABINOWITZ J C LOCH R AND GOLDSTEIN M Effects of folic acid antagonist therapy on urinary excretion of formic acid by humans *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 98:111 1958
- 516 HEINLE R W WELCH A D SCHAEF A MEACHAM C C AND JERUSOFF W H Studies of excretion (and absorption) of Ca^{50} labeled vitamin B_{12} in pernicious anemia *Tr Am Physicians* 65:14 1959
- 517 BOOTH C C AND MOLLIN D I Plasma tissue and urinary radioactivity after oral administration of ^{57}Co labelled B_{12} *In* Henrich H C Vitamin B₁₂ and Intrinsic Factor Stuttgart Ferdinand Enke 1959
- 518 GLASS G B J BOYD I J CHINN C A AND SHEEHAN O I Uptake of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ by the liver in humans test of measurement of intestinal absorption of vitamin B₁₂ and intrinsic factor activity *Arch Biochem* 51:21 1954
- 519 ELLENBOFF L AND WILLIAMS W L Quantitative assay of intrinsic factor by urinary excretion of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ *Blood* 13:82 1958
- 520 REISNER F H JR ROSENBLUM C AND MORCAN M C Urinary excretion of orally administered Ca^{50} vitamin B₁₂ in normal subjects and patients with pernicious anemia and pure Clinical Research Proceedings 56 1954
- 521 RATH C F MCCURDY I R SCHREINER C E AND DUFFY B J The effect of renal disease on the urinary excretion of cobalt 60 vitamin B₁₂ *In* Proceedings of the Sixth International Congress of the International Society of Hematology New York Crane & Stratton 1958
- 522 DUNN A I WALSH J R AND HOLTHUIS J M Radioactive cyanocobalamin (vitamin B₁₂) in renal disease *Arch Int Med* 101:91 1958
- 523 ROSENBLUM C AND CHIHARD I Personal communication
- 524 BLUMHART C H Concentration of vitamin B₁₂ from urine by adsorption on carbon *J Lab & Clin Med* 5:69 1958
- 525 HAWKINS C F Value of serum iron levels in assessing effect of haematinic in the microcytic anemias *Brit M J* 1:383 1955
- 526 VILTER R W HORRIGAN D MUELLER J I JARRICO F VILTER C F HAWKINS A AND SEATON A Studies on the relationships of vitamin B₁₂ folic acid thymine uracil and methyl group donors in persons with pernicious anemia and related megaloblastic anemia *Blood* 5:69 1950
- 527 CONLEY C L AND KREYFANS J R Development of nucleic acid manifestations of pernicious anemia during multivitamin therapy *New England J Med* 45:29 1951
- 528 BERK L DENY BROWN D FINLAND M AND CASTLE W B Effectiveness of vitamin B₁₂ in combined vitamin B₁₂ deficiency Rapid progression of neurologic manifestations and absence of allergic reactions in a patient sensitive to injectable liver extracts *New England J Med* 93:8 1948
- 529 SCHIEFF J F AND RUNDLES R W Report of lingual manifestations of

- treatment of pernicious anemia with vitamin B₁₂ without intrinsic factor
New England J Med 253 509 1955
- 563 MILLER O N RANEY J L AND HUNTER F M Effect of intrinsic factor on uptake of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ by slices of rat liver Fed Proc 16 393 1957
- 64 — AND HUNTER F M Stimulation of vit B uptake in tissue slices by intrinsic factor concentrate Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 96 39 1957
- 65 BASTROP MADSEN I AND LARSEN L Oral treatment of megaloblastic anemia with small amounts of vitamin B₁₂ and intrinsic factor Acta haemat 13 113 1955
- 66 SCHWARTZ M LOUS P AND MEULENCRACHT E Reduced effect of heterologous intrinsic factor after prolonged oral treatment in pernicious anemia Lancet 1 151 1957
- 67 KRISTENSEN O LUND J OHLSEN A S AND PEDERSON J Maintenance therapy in pernicious anemia controlled by determining vitamin B₁₂ level in plasma Lancet 1 146 1957
- 68 LOWENSTEIN L BRUNTON L SHAIRO L DE LFEUW N AND DUBESNE M Maintenance therapy of pernicious anemia with oral administration of intrinsic factor and vitamin B Canad M A J 11 53 1957
- 69 BERLIN R BERLIN H BRANTE G AND SJOBERG S G Failures in long term treatment of pernicious anemia with B₁₂ intrinsic factor preparations Acta med scandinav 161 143 1958
- 70 SCHWARTZ M LOUS P AND MEULENCRACHT L Absorption of vitamin B₁₂ in pernicious anemia Defective absorption induced by prolonged oral treatment Lancet 1 100 1958
- 71 STOKES J B AND FITZES W R Pernicious anaemia treated orally with Bifactor Refractoriness to potent animal intrinsic factor Brit M J 1 32 1958
- LICHTMAN H C ELLENBOGEN L AND WILLIAMS W L Absorption of vitamin B₁₂ by pernicious anemia patients before and after maintenance on an intrinsic factor concentrate Third Vitamin B₁₂ Symposium New York Academy of Medicine (Jan 31 Feb 1) 1958 See also WILLIAMS W L Absorption of vitamin B₁₂ via intrinsic factor concentrate Fed Proc 18 351 1959
- 73 FOUTS J J HELMER O M AND CHERNISH S M Absorption of radioactive B₁₂ in patients with pernicious anemia after long term oral and parenteral therapy The American College of Physicians Fortieth Annual Session Chicago (April 20-24) 1959
- 74 BERLIN R BERLIN H BRANTE G AND SJOBERG S G Refractoriness to intrinsic factor B₁₂ preparations abolished by massive dose of intrinsic factor Acta med scandinav 16 314 1958
- 75 SCHWARTZ M Intrinsic factor inhibiting substance in serum of orally treated patients with pernicious anemia Lancet 2 61 1958
- 76 TAYLOR K B AND MORTON J A An antibody to Castle's intrinsic factor Lancet 1 19 58
- 77 HERBERT A Unpublished data

- 416 MOLLIN D I AND ROSS C I M Serum vitamin B₁₂ concentration of patients with megaloblastic anaemia after treatment with vitamin B₁₂ folic acid or folic acid Brit M J 2 C10 1955
- 417 UNGLEB W C MILLER O N AND COLDSWORTH C A Saturation studies with vitamin B₁₂ in human subjects Am J Clin Nutrition 6 555 1958
- 418 GOODMAN I S AND CHANAN A The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics ed 4 New York Macmillan 1955
- 419 GOLDBLATT S On the intravenous administration of cyanocobalamin Am J Clin Nutrition 3 129 1955
- 420 CHOW B F Personal communication to reference 482
- 421 HALL B F KRUSEN I H AND WOLTMAN H W Vitamin B₁₂ and coordination exercises for combined degeneration of the spinal cord in pernicious anemia JAMA 181 257 1949
- 422 CRASBICK R Maintenance treatment in pernicious anaemia Lancet 1 209 1959
- 423a RUNDLES R W Diagnosis in neurologic manifestations of pernicious anemia Blood 1 209 1946
- 423b BEHRLE F H AND STURGIS C The relation of therapy in pernicious anemia to changes in the nervous system Blood 3 1 1948
- 424 O'CONNOR J S DAVIS R I LANGFORTH O R AND CHOW B F Metabolic studies of vitamin B₁₂ and Depnar in multiple sclerosis (MS) and clinically healthy subjects Fed Proc 17 528 1958
- 425a THOMSON R L AND HECHT R A Studies on a long acting vitamin B₁₂ preparation Am J Clin Nutr 1 311 1959
- 425b HEMSTED F H AND MILLS J Vitamin B₁₂ in pernicious anemia Lancet 1 1302 1958
- 426 NUBERG H F Cytologic technic for office and clinic Postgrad Med 3 309 1958
- 427 TANAKA K R AND CHURCH C O Spontaneous remission in pernicious anemia Report of three New England J Med 58 1 1958
- 428 CLASS C B J Biochemistry and physiology of Castle's intrinsic factor and its relationship to the metabolism of vitamin B Rev hemat 10 13 1955
- 429 ESTREN S AND WASSERMAN L R Pernicious anemia I Remission by small oral doses of purified vitamin B₁₂ Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 91 499 1956
- 430a SCHWARTZ S O FRIEDMAN I A AND CAST H I Long term evaluation of vitamin B₁₂ in treatment of pernicious anemia JAMA 157 29 1955
- 430b CHALMERS J N M AND SHINTON N K Absorption of orally administered vitamin B₁₂ in pernicious anemia Lancet 1 998 1958
- 431 BRODY E A ESTREN S AND WASSERMAN L R Treatment of pernicious anemia by oral administration of vitamin B₁₂ without added intrinsic factor New England J Med 60 361 1959
- 432 CONLEY C L AND KREVANS J R New developments in the diagnosis and treatment of pernicious anemia Ann Int Med 43 8 1955
- 433 REISNER E H JR WEINER L SCHITTNE M T AND HENCK E A Oral

- tions on the metabolism of folic acid in man and on the effect of aminopterin Cancer 115: 1958
- 596 JUKES T H Recent studies with hemopoietic factors intrinsic factor and folic acid In Proceedings of the Sixth International Congress of the International Society of Hematology New York Grune & Stratton 1958
- 597 NOREN B Allergic reactions in parenteral liver therapy and vitamin B Acta med scandinav 13: 48 1950
- 598 OSTLING G NYBERG W AND GORDIN R Antianemic activity of alkali treated crude liver extract Acta med scandinav 145: 40 1953
- 599 OWREN I A A protein synthesis liver factor lacking in pernicious anemia and related macrocytic anemias Scandinau J Clin & Lab Invest 241 1950
- 600 — Is B₁₂ the complete therapeutic answer in pernicious anemia? In Proceedings of the Third International Congress of the International Society of Hematology New York Grune & Stratton 1951
- 601 GORDIN R Prothrombin in cryptogenic pernicious anemia and pernicious tapeworm anemia and its response to treatment Acta med scandinav 149: 1 1954
- 602 BEZMAN A KINNEAR D G AND ZAMCHICK N Daily oral and potassium iodide absorption and serum carotene in pernicious anemia J Lab & Clin Med 53: 996 1959
- 603 SPAET T H AND KROPATKIN M Studies on prothrombin derivatives in vitamin K deficiency A M A Arch Int Med 102: 558 1958
- 604 WANG C I AND BOSSAK E T Hemorrhagic manifestations in idiopathic sprue a report of 2 cases and review of the literature J Mount Sinai Hosp (New York) 43: 17 1957 Simultaneously published in Adlersberg D The Malabsorption Syndrome New York Grune & Stratton 1957
- 605 VILTER R W Ascorbic acid deficiency (scurvy) In Harrison T R Adams R D Bennett I L Jr Resnik W H Tlorn G W and Wintrobe M M Principles of Internal Medicine New York McGraw Hill 1958
- 606 — Ascorbic acid IX Effects of deficiency in human beings I: Sebrell W H Jr and Harris R S The Vitamins New York Academic Press 1954 vol 1
- 607 — Ascorbic acid XI (B) Requirements of human beings I: Sebrell W H Jr and Harris R S The Vitamins New York Academic Press 1954 vol 1
- 608 COX E V GADDIS R MATTHEWS D COOKE W T AND MEYNELL M J An inter relationship between ascorbic acid and cyanocobalamin Clin Sci 1: 681 1958
- 609 WALLERTEIN R O HARRIS J W AND CARLDA C J Ascorbic acid deficiency in pernicious anemia Am J Med 14: 53 1953
- 610 CROSBY W H M Use of blood transfusion Blood 13: 1198 1958
- 611 ADLERBERG D COLCHER H A D WANG C Oral use of hydrocortisone (Compound F) in treatment of sprue Arch Int Med 92: 615 1953
- 612 WOLLASTON E E Sprue and allied malabsorption syndromes In Cecil R L AND LOEB R F Eds A Textbook of Medicine ed 10 Philadelphia W B Saunders 1959

- 578 GYORGY I LOCANTINI L M MILLER F R AND WEISS A Hematopoiesis blood group substance and bifidus factor *Tr A Am Physicians* 67 117 1954
- 579 LATNER A L MERRILLS R J AND RAINE I C D I Further observations on the isolation and chemical composition of Castle's intrinsic factor *Biochem J* 57 XIX 1954
- 580 STRINGER G F Über fucosylhaltige Mucine vorwiegend entodermalen Ursprungs mit Blutgruppen- und anderen biologischen Eigenschaften *Klin Wchnschr* 33 347 1955
- 581 VAN BAAL J I W WIJMECA H G AND VAN DER HART M Blood group substance activity of intrinsic factor preparations *Biochim et biophys acta* 17 600 1955
- 581a TAYLOR K B AND MORTON J A An antibody to Castle's intrinsic factor *J Path & Bact* 71 117 1955
- 581b LOWENSTEIN L COOPER B A BRUNTON L AND GARTHA S Antibodies in human and rabbit sera to hog intrinsic factor preparations *J Clin Invest* 38 1027 1959
- 582 HEATHCOTE J G AND MOONEY I S The oral treatment of pernicious anemia *Lancet* 1 982 1958
- 583 NYBERG W AND REIZENSTEIN I Intestinal absorption of radiovitamin B bound in pig liver *Lancet* 2 832 1958
- 584 CASTLE W B Oral treatment of pernicious anemia *Lancet* 2 270 1958
- 585 LATNER A L Absorption of bound radioactive vitamin B *Lancet* 961 1958
- 586 GRASBECK R RINIBERG L SJOHNS K AND NYBERG W Absorption of bound radioactive vitamin B *Lancet* 961 1958
- 587 CHOW B F MEIER I AND FREE S M Absorption of vitamin B enhanced by d sorbitol *Am J Clin Nutrition* 6 30 1958
- 588 HERBERT V BIERFASCH M WASSERMAN L R ESTREN S AND BRODY F Effect of d sorbitol on absorption of vitamin B by human subjects able to produce intrinsic factor *Am J Clin Nutrition* 7 195 1959
- 589 ELLENBOGEN I HERBERT V AND WILLIAMS W L Effect of d sorbitol on absorption of vitamin B by pernicious anemia patients *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 99 9 1958
- 590 CHAMBERS J N M AND SHINTON N K Effect of d sorbitol on the absorption of orally administered vitamin B *Nature* 193 118 1959
- 591 HERBERT V Sorbitol and vitamin B absorption *Am J Clin Nutrition* 6 547 1958
- 592 The Pharmacopeia of the United States of America Fifteenth Revision Official from December 1 1959
- 593 JUKES T H B Vitamins for Blood Formation Springfield Ill Charles C Thomas 1952
- 594 SCHOENBACH E B GREENSPAN F M AND COISKY J Reversal of Aminopterin and Amethopterin toxicity by citrovorum factor *JAMA* 144 158 1950
- 595 CONNIT P T AND CRICK D Studies on the folic acid vitamins I Observa-

Index

A l l l y d S l G l d t y
 b j d B d f y th 11
 l l m t b y b l th l 80 81
 l t 80 81
 l m h t 23 80
 l d 2 2 9 81
 A d d t m B l l j t 30
 A l d n S T l m l 63
 l m d b d l y 63
 A d d d l l p i
 m b
 A d d l 22 S l
 P m
 A d l t d S d
 A d t t p h h m m t m l
 b e p t d 108 114 115
 l d 114
 t p l p 3 114
 A g g d d f g i h y th 2
 m g l b l a t m h 2 0
 p o o d t w h 20
 m m B l l th 2
 A g l o c y o m 60 61
 A l h l m h
 f l d d f l 19 52 3 6
 m B d f h 19
 A m g t p d d m g l l l 6
 t m 56 110
 A m y t l f d g l b l m 56
 A p d g l l l
 m 34 40 S l B l d l p l
 A h t 59-60
 A d d l S P
 p l 61-72
 l d 61
 l t g f m t d m p l b l t
 61 62 98-99
 g l 61
 b l d t f 113 114
 d m p h 12
 b h p w m l S F l l
 g l b l m
 l m l y
 m g l b l t 60 61 t 8
 p m
 t l f m f l l r
 f m b l t b m r r w 61 S l
 H m g l b y h e e d f t m h
 g l b l t m
 d p t h f t y m g l b l S A l e e
 t m

o c y l S l M g l l l t m
 l s l t 12
 i l d 12 52 53
 l 52 53
 f t y 59
 t j l l d t p l 51 2
 g l l l t S M g l b l
 l g l l l S h t l m g
 l b l
 l S l m
 f t y
 o c y l 9
 g l b l t 9 62
 f l d d f y 59-60
 d 62
 t d t m t f 62
 t m B e d f y 61
 y t t t t m t f 62
 m b l 60
 A h y t o s 3
 p l l g m o c y t e s 12
 A S A m t b l e s
 A h l m l f h h p e w m f r e 104
 115
 A b t t t m t
 l l d l o c p y d 40 11
 g l b l m 40
 y e m 40 115
 f l l 54
 A l t p d d g l b l m
 56-8
 f l d f 6
 B f 56
 d d w l t l t f 56
 A t b l
 f f l l d 6- 110-111
 f f d 57
 f l y 57
 f B 41
 A l ; f l 21 2
 A B 41
 t l l g 41
 A l l h f t b g l 6 9 S l
 S j l l l y p g t d
 l f m g l b l m 10 52 d
 66 68 69-70 7 8 10 110
 A f m o c l f 34 3
 p l g l f t t m B h e p 35
 p l g d f t m B i e b
 l 34
 A l m l d 39
 A b d
 t t f n i k 46

- l f S i t h Ir
 i p m 77
 D t
 gl f t t t f l d 115
 d t g f l d l t B
 l f y S N t l g l l l
 r d g l l l f 40
 D G k l l d 9
 D G g l l y d 9
 D l 6 57
 D y b l i l y l e s S F l l
 d y b l d y h v t m B
 d y b l d y t h
 D p h y l l l l m l S F h t t m
 D t l f l l 39 40
 D y t y t d g o y 3
 E l l b l e s t f g l l l
 t
 F l l d d g l b l t
 115 S f A l d l G l l
 F y H y p h l m H g l d m
 P i t y F y
 I o c l t m y 34
 F t t t m 34
 F l l l y p g t d g l l l
 3
 F p h l l l l s i B d f
 g 16
 l 7 8 16
 g l 16
 F y h y l 59
 F t h e m 3 14
 F y t h y t t f S A f
 m p f l
 E y h l k 59
 E h l l m g l b l t 16
 E h l l y f m B 83 84
 E h y l d d m B h
 r p 35
 F l g l f l l I t h m l l l
 m 18 62
 E g l g l t t m B 83 84
 E 23 22 S f v m D l
 F t v l l 11
 F t b l d 3 58
 F l
 f l l d 49-50 58 9
 f m B 42
 F b t p m m g l l l 39
 h g h d F l l l
 p h g 39
 p d g g l y 22 3
 t m t 104 11
 F l g l 34
 F t l g l l 34
- f l d
 b p 32 53 87 88 109-110
 b a l d f 4
 m g l l l t m o c d t h i
 l t 56-7
 j g y d
 t f 53
 e s f 8a 88
 l g r y m l m g
 B d f y 97
 t g t 6 110
 11 d l l 44 45 8a 99 S l F l d
 m l l
 l w f 99
 l d t y m B j 99
 l l 4 4 110
 d e c t f 87 88
 p l f 110
 l l 87 88
 f g e s 51 110
 b f f 110
 d f y S f M g l l l
 b t g S B l d l o o p d m
 t b m w l e v l l 18 9 61
 g g t p h y S G p h y
 g l b r y t f f l d 44 53-54
 l l g t 63 5
 d l t l t 6-58 6
 l 56-8
 f l d g t 56
 p m h 57
 l m l g j b l g 3 14
 m m 4 8a-90
 f l t b g t d l a a
 8a 8b 87 88
 f l d m l l S F l l
 m l l
 f l 89 90
 f m m l m d 88 89
 l 44 56
 d m l y d q t r 44
 4 53 56
 l l d l y j m y 56
 m l b p d 53 5
 d m l y t d q d 44-53
 l h l h o s 52 53
 m g l l l m f 46-49
 m g l l l m f g f
 p j m 49 51
 p l d p l m
 m 51
 t m l f 6 t f 89
 d y l f f 89
 t m S f M k l l l
 t m t
 h l l d 109-110
 l 109-110
 p l 110

- (ter g tr j) ost my 8
 f 8
 d f y
 g g t phy 23 2 8
 f ll z g t j t my 27 8
 f ll g bo l g my 48
 i t m dia m g l bl d 10 11
 m k d by m g l bla m 12 14 96
 m k g m g l bl m 8 12 14 96
 i h m w 96
 m l l m g l bl 96
 J d S I
 J j l t 34
 J j m l d 38 53
 J l p i m S P
 m hldhood
 A y m g l bl m 40
 A h k d m g l bl m 49
 L b ll y f f l d 86
 La b ll l hm y f m B z.
 83-84
 L hm d m g l bl t m 60
 L k m
 lyp gm d t ph l 12
 m gal bl b m er w 59 8
 Le k p es m g l bla S S I A h
 h f h gh Eos phala hyp
 gm t d h ph l hyp gm d
 Li j l d m g l bl m 5
 L
 d
 m ocytes 12
 m yt m w h 52 53
 f l d d f y 2 53
 m g l lla m w h 19 52 53
 d f p m 311
 m f m g l lla m
 111 112
 f l d 45 47 99
 i m B i d f y 99
 f l d 9 99
 m B i d f 99
 i m f per m
 l 21
 p l 111 112
 m B t 31 5 75
 l b l y f h m p 100-101
 b l g hal l f 31
 esa f d pl 100-102
 Lymph gr l m tne 34
 Lymphosa m 34
 M bl 10 S als M g l bl t t m d t
 M ocytes
 pla m l 61
 h m t l g d d 12
 l er d 12
 m g l bl an m 3 6 7 11
 l ytes m m k g 12 61
 M ocy m S A m ma yt
 M loest m g l l l t m 3 6 8
 10
 ly g 6 8 10 66-68 69 7 8 10 3
 M l ba p y d m
 l l j t 3-4
 d f 31
 z t my p r t l z 28
 d l 6
 m l t 38
 f t t 82
 t f l l 31 92 93
 m g l bl m i 13 32 35 53-55
 oc l S rth oc lt
 r ma y 32 33 53-5 S als C l d as
 T p f gru
 d f t 32
 p d g m l t pl d f es f h m t p
 f 13 14 97
 rse d p m sy 53
 d y 34-35 53
 d f i 34
 es f 36-37
 v m k ba rp d f t 112
 M l g y
 f l d d f y 12 41 59
 hyp gm d ph la l
 m g l bl t m d 2 40-41 59 62 8
 m B i q m i d by 40-41
 M p l f m m g l bl t
 m 3
 M g l bl
 b h m l pl f m pl l gy 16
 b h m t f 15-17
 d f t
 d b l d t 15
 F l g d l
 m d 6 8 10
 10 11
 d f t 10
 d f y d 10 11 14
 g f ly f l id or tam B i d f
 y 10 11 66 67 69- 0
 l y pl m d 3 5 1 16
 lo l i d 15
 h y m 15
 l t, l
 M l bl m S als F l d d f
 y v m B i d f y
 b h m l y 15-17 60 61 62
 bo m row m g l bla i
 d f l id dm i t m
 B d f y 98 99

- C i d d t my 27 8
 C i j ont my 27 8
 C i
 f l e d (h l d od d d l t) 33
 54-55
 f d z i g t l t phy 21
 f p m 23 24
 G l t m 98
 G l i t 90
 G l o s t
 f l d d G i y 98
 m l b s t y d m 3
 i m B d f i y 71 72
 G l t f d i h l d h d d d l t o e l
 j 37 53 115
 G d l i f y d l l b l m
 25
 G t y t h d p m i 75
 H i v l h t i 90
 H m i 97
 H m o c h m a t o s d m g l l l i 60 61
 t t w h l l d 61
 t t m t w h p y d 61
 H m g l b y h e s d f i m k a g m g l
 b l a i m 24 61 S f f d f i y
 m k g m g l b l t
 H l y p m 5
 H m h g S B l d g
 H m i d o s d m g l l b l i m 96
 H j d S L d
 H t m f t h i h y d 14 80 S f
 A f l h y d
 H g i t f i s i t
 f
 H p p c t d t l f h l f k
 S A t h i f f t b g b l E
 f h l h y p g m t d A t p l i e h p g
 m t d
 H y p e t h d m g t m B d S 0
 H y p p t h m b m m g l b l t m
 37 111 112
 H y p t h y d m d m g l l l m 5-26
 35
 I v p m 71 5
 I d p l f y m g l b l m 5
 A m f t y m g l b l
 l o p t h t h S C i d t l d
 h d d d l
 l
 m b d d t m B l s d G y w h
 14
 e f 34
 m i l 14
 m
 f l d b r p d 53
 i f i i S i i
 i t r a f
 m o s f d s l i i t b 53
 t d t m B b p t 30
 f t m B l b p t 30
 f m e f b l a t m l
 f f y o u g a l b l m j 46-49
 b d d G y d 46 49 11
 f l d d G y d 46-49 8
 t B d G y d 49
 f f e c t d m g l b l t m 113
 g l l b l d 5
 l p t t 5
 i J 15
 y t t 115
 f t m d t m g l l l t S M g l b l t
 t m d
 f t t
 phy 32 33 53
 d d r s d p f d i s d
 e l t l 34
 m l g y 34
 p f t f S i t i
 t p f
 t 34 53
 f t f t S f v i m B l s d G
 t m t
 y
 t 81 82
 81 90-94
 t b d y 107 108
 b l o o d g p A b 10
 h b g m B t t 9
 h b t s) 8-30 82
 2 106
 p f
 l m d j d f 32 35-36
 t e s t l o s 30 32 3 38 10
 j 2
 l B b p t 0-2
 l i m B t p t d t g m
 106
 h m f 5-6
 g t t h y 2 24 6-28 82
 g t l d m g 21 28
 l b f y d l d g i
 8
 t m 21 2
 f s y 42
 f 2
 l a t b C b b l 3-21 93 94
 m l b b l 108 109
 m 22
 m t p h 106-108
 i
 b a p

- pt d mag bo
 y h 65 0 72 3
 ymm t l 65 72
 p h g 64
 p j h l rv d m g 65
 poe 6 66
 p g 103
 f y hos 6 66-69
 l ps 103 10
 t l d d m g 61-66 68-0
 s b t mb d d g 64 6
 t h mbly p 6
 tm t 102 103
 b t 66 66
 h t t m 66-68 7
- N t j l l
 h j gmo l s Ls A th i ft t
 ght
 t t l byf gm l
 m g l b l 3 6 8 j t
 p 12
 denj d m l g 12
 l m g l b l m 3
 d d m g l b l m 3
 N b m f l d l l 58 59
 N t p l m y m S N l
 m g f f f m
 N p l p S C l d h l d h d
 d d l t
 N m b l t S als B m w m
 f l t
 t f d y b l d bo l
 d h y m d l 15
- N l f y hes
 d f t i m g l b l 16 60-62
 f l d d m B12 15-17 64 9
 N l m y m S N l
 m l b l m
 N t l g l b l t m 44 56
 b d l f f h r f t
 19 46 49 50 51
 f l d d f y 44-56 7
 d h b I d M d M l y l
 6-77
 m B d E 19 0 46 51 6
- O h m m l h m f B12 83
 O l f h l l l S Ep h l l l l
 O d g l b l m l 62
 O d l d 62
- P d 3
 P re es l s A l mb des
 F h p m T
 P re hes s \ re y m d m
 m B12 d f y
 P li m l b l m 40
 P p 42
- P m 22 S l M g l b l t
 m v m B d 6 y
 h l d h d 3
 l l d i 63- 5
 d f l
 d b t d 68
 f h t p w m S F h p m m g l b l
 m
 f l d d f y 99-100 c / v t
 m B12 f l d m tabul m
 gas phy l 1 22
 g S Gas m l
 p m
 g t 23 24
 g f l b l d d
 g t y l l 75
 f m lyt h
 d q yth p 5
 d C d E gla d l l d \
 Y k s d l 6
 ne g h g d
 f d p es d 10
 21
 f y B12 40-41
 r m 100 10
 Ph b b t l d m g l b l m 56
 Ph y d m g l b l m 6
 J hy d B12 b rp 32-36
 p sh y d m g l b l m l
 25
 P la l g f b l m b aarr g t
 d d d 3 112
 P l loc os 3
 p l h 59
 P ly m ph l l k y es S E f b l
 N j h l
 p l l l l S Nerv y t m d m
 p m B d f y
 p y
 g t d d 42
 re d f y 11
 m g l b l m 13 42 49 51
 d f l d d f y 49-51 8
 d m B d f y 0 51
 d 50
 m f l d i 50
 m B 42
 P m d i m g l b l m 56
 f
 y l
 f l d 64
 m B12 41 64
 hes f t 111 112
 m B h d g 42-43
 P hr mb m m g l b l m 3
 111 112
 P y hos S \ re y m d m g m
 B d f y

- V g m f i d mal 0
 mu B12 d f y 19 0 31 6
 V g S V g
 V i m A t l e r t t 37
 V m B d f y f d g m g l b l
 m 61
 V m B12
 b p c a l I I t
 d l t b l 1 31 53
 by u r g r y 104 11
 d p by f 9
 t h m t
 by d r p b h m 32 33
 108 114
 by h y p a s g t m h 30 109
 by f t 20-2 106-108
 l y d 3 33 108 114
 by t h g t 108 109
 p g y 42
 m h m 0-1 32-38 91 105
 f 30 32
 f 90-94
 f l t 90
 l p t k 90
 p l m p t k 90
 t h t t l 78-79
 y 90-94 S f c h l l g
 t
 l i d 41
 b d g
 y f 8
 b y m 81
 by f m e r l y 30
 by r u m p t 4 43
 p y f r u m d d b f
 n s f 101
 f t 4-43
 d 6 y f 42-43
 b d y t S L a m B
 n y m 6 10
 d 6 y S f M g l b l a m
 b m w l l 18 41 59 41
 g g t t b c G p h y
 l l p t 63-75
 d d q b r t 40-40 5
 T b l f t s
 d d q g e s 18-0
 d l d q l z s 40-43 59 6
 d o c d d r e d 43 S l a p e c f i
 d d
 g e c m y g 6-8
 t m a l g m r p l g y 3-14
 m k d b y f l d d S
 F l a d m k g t m B12 d f
 m k d b y d f e y S f d 6
 y m k g m g l b l a s m
 m a s k d b y l e r d s e 5
 r v y m d s a g S V y m
 d m g t m u B12 d f y
 p y t u d l d h e s l w d 16
 t f
 e s p a s b p y
 h m a l g 8-9
 l g 66 68
 e r m t m B12 l l s S V i m B12
 m l l
 t m S a l M g l b l a s m
 t m t
 w h f l d c F l d m a s k g
 t m u B12 d 6 y
 h m u B12 95-109
 f 104 109
 p t l 100-104
 l o c y f 9 95-96
 l o c y p b 98-99
 f d 18-19
 s e b d m b l m 113
 b l 81
 d r b l d y h 15-17
 f l s d m b l m 17 82 86 88 89 90
 99-100
 f l s d m t b l m 100
 g a s t j 8
 l S L a e r m u B12
 l p y h s 15-17 101
 p t y h e s 41 64
 b l d y h e s 15-17
 f l f d 10
 h a h t b y m B12 g 41
 l 16
 l b l m h y l g p y h e s b y 16
 m b l m 15-17 0- 62 8 8 90-94 99-
 104
 j h y l g l d o s 0 10
 d l l l 41 84 85
 q m f e m a 18 102
 d w h h y p r h y z d m 0
 d w h l l e s 103
 d w h m l g y 41
 m l l e 7 9 10 82 80
 l l 17
 d w h g g 3
 f l s d d m t f e c t 97
 f e e g f i f 84
 l y v i t m B12 d f y 82
 m g l b l m d
 l a s t s 37
 w b o 42
 f g y 42
 m b l g l a y f 82 80
 f l e s l i s 83-84
 l m e r 82-85
 e s p m B12 d m u
 l 105
 p l 101 109

